

AMP Summary for FY 2004

TABLE 2.2. FY-2004 Funding Sources

SUMMARY BY PROJECT	AMP Power Revenues	Other Funding	Appropriations Request
I. PROGRAM ADMINISTRATION			
<u>A. ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT WORK GROUP</u>			
1. Personnel Costs	178,000		
2. AMWG Member Travel Reimbursement	13,000		
3. Reclamation Travel	18,000		
4. Facilitation Contract	25,000		
5. Other	9,000		
<u>B. TECHNICAL WORK GROUP</u>			
1. Personnel Costs	81,000		
2. TWG Member Travel Reimbursement	15,000		
3. Reclamation Travel	17,000		
4. TWG Chair Reimbursement	25,000		
5. Other	2,000		
<u>C. COMPLIANCE DOCUMENTS</u>	26,000		
<u>D. CONTRACT ADMINISTRATION</u>	25,000		
II. TRIBAL CONSULTATION			
<u>A. COOPERATIVE AGREEMENTS WITH TRIBES</u>			
1. Hopi Tribe			80,000
2. Hualapai Tribe			80,000
3. Navajo Nation			80,000
4. Pueblo of Zuni			80,000
5. Southern Paiute			80,000
<u>B. RIVER TRIP LOGISTICS COSTS TO GCMRC</u>			
1. Hopi Tribe			15,000
2. Hualapai Tribe			15,000
3. Navajo Nation			15,000
4. Pueblo of Zuni			15,000
5. Southern Paiute			15,000
III. PROGRAMMATIC AGMT. FOR CULTURAL RESOURCES			
<u>A. WORK PLAN ACTIVITIES</u>			
1. Completion of HPP	50,000		
2. Reclamation Administration	50,000		
3. Treatment & Monitoring Preparation Plan & Implementation	400,000		
IV. EXPERIMENTAL FLOW FUND	500,000		1,000,000
SUBTOTAL	1,434,000		1,475,000
I. SCIENCE PROJECTS			
<u>A. TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEM ACTIVITIES</u>			
1. Terrestrial Ecosystem Monitoring	624,490		
2. Kanab Ambersnail Monitoring	86,100		
3. New Research in Terrestrial Ecosystems	69,250		
4. Mapping Holocene Deposits	112,850		
5. Cultural Data Base Plan	24,850		
6. Kanab Ambersnail Taxonomy	25,850		100,000
<u>B. AQUATIC ECOSYSTEM ACTIVITIES</u>			
1. Aquatic Foodbase - External	179,600		
2. Aquatic Foodbase - In House	91,250		
3. Status and Trends of Downstream Fish	856,210		
4. Status and Trends of the Lee's Ferry Trout Fishery	161,660		
5. Integrated Water Quality Monitoring - Downstream	199,900		
6. Integrated Water Quality Monitoring - Lake Powell		309,000	
7. Native & Non-Native Fish Species	77,200		
8. Captive Breeding Program	50,000		100,000

C. INTEGRATED ECOSYSTEM ACTIVITIES			
1. Fine-Grained Sediment Storage	461,730		15,000
2. Streamflow and Fine-Sediment Transport	609,420		95,000
3. Coarse-Grained Sediment Inputs	145,275		
4. Sediment Transport Modeling	256,375		
5. Control Network	86,640		
6. Channel Mapping	125,900		
7. LCR Integrated Studies			200,000
D. OTHER SCIENCE ACTIVITIES			
1. Unsolicited Proposals	78,880		
Adopt-a-Beach	10,000		
2. AMWG/TWG Requests	64,155		
3. In-House Research	22,000		
4. Tribal Outreach	34,850		
5. Public Outreach Involvement Plan Implementation	14,850		
6. Cultural Resource Synthesis & Status Report	10,850		
7. Oral Traditions	54,850		
II. ADMINISTRATIVE & TECHNICAL SUPPORT SERVICES			
E. ADMINISTRATIVE & MANAGEMENT			
1. Administrative Operations	818,600		
2. Program Planning & Management	302,870		
3. AMWG/TWG Participation	55,390		
4. Independent Reviews	170,465		
F. TECHNICAL SUPPORT SERVICES			
1. Geographic Information Systems	146,500		
2. Data Base Management	100,300		
3. Library Operations	75,800		25,000
4. Survey Operations	130,260		
5. Decision Support System			150,000
6. Systems Administration	261,450		
7. Aerial Photography (previously in Remote Sensing)	514,380		
8. Logistics (Distributed to Projects)			
SUBTOTAL	8,545,000	309,000	2,160,000
TOTAL OF ALL SOURCES			11,014,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: A.1. Personnel Costs

General Project Description: This project represents Reclamation staff costs to perform the daily work activities required to operate the Adaptive Management Work Group. The work includes completing assignments resulting from AMWG meetings, consulting with stakeholders on a variety of AMP issues relating to the operation of Glen Canyon Dam, disseminating pertinent information to the AMWG, preparing and tracking budget expenses, and updating Reclamation's web page.

Project Goals and Objectives: The **primary goal** is to perform all work associated with the AMWG in a timely and efficient manner while using the funds available as prudently as possible. **Secondary goals** include increasing each stakeholder's awareness of significant budget and legislative issues related to the AMP, improving working relationships with the AMWG members/alternates, finding constructive ways to resolve differences, and addressing individual concerns in an open and accepting forum of discussion.

Expected Results: Personnel costs will not exceed what has been proposed in the budget and Reclamation staff will provide budget information to the AMWG on a regular basis. Completed work products will be of high quality and promptly distributed to AMWG members/alternates and interested parties. Budget reports will be presented in a format conducive to AMWG needs.

Budget: \$178,000

	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)			
Manager (0.5 FTE)	65,000	71,000	73,000
Biologist (0.25 FTE)	25,000	36,000	24,000
Management Analyst (0.63 FTE)	29,000	23,000	37,000
Website/FACA (0.5 FTE)	49,000	43,000	44,000
TOTAL	163,000	173,000	178,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: A.2. AMWG Member Travel Reimbursement

General Project Description: This project covers the costs to reimburse AMWG members or alternates to attend regularly scheduled AMWG meetings.

Project Goals and Objectives: The primary goal for reimbursing travel expenses to AMWG members or alternates is to encourage their attendance at all meetings. Because the meetings are often scheduled in Phoenix, Arizona, many members must incur air or POV travel and by having Reclamation reimburse those and other related travel costs, e.g., hotel, per diem, rental car, etc. opportunities are increased for more members to participate in a variety of AMWG/TWG assignments. Also, because Reclamation can purchase airline tickets at the Federal Government rate, there are additional cost savings to the program.

Expected Results: The Glen Canyon Dam Adaptive Management Program will benefit from having all the AMWG members participate in regularly scheduled meetings. As a collective body, they address and resolve concerns associated with the operation of Glen Canyon Dam and make recommendations to the Secretary of the Interior for continued science efforts performed below the GCD.

Budget: \$13,000

	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
AMWG Member Travel Reimbursement	10,000	10,000	13,000
TOTAL	10,000	10,000	13,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: A.3. Reclamation Travel

General Project Description: This project covers travel expenses Reclamation staff incur to attend AMWG and ad hoc group meetings. In order to work on AMWG/ad hoc assignments, the meetings are often held in Phoenix, Arizona. As such, Reclamation staff must make additional trips throughout the year in completion of those assignments.

Project Goals and Objectives: The primary goal is for Reclamation staff to be able to travel to meetings and participate in completing AMWG/TWG assignments. By doing so, the program benefits from greater interaction among its members as well as continued improvement and commitment to operating GCD in the best manner possible and obtaining the results from science work being done in the canyon.

Expected Results: Reclamation staff will be involved with AMWG/TWG members in completing work assignments and resolving issues that affect the AMP. They will develop better working relationships with all involved and work toward consensus on a variety of sensitive issues.

Budget: \$ 18,000

	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Reclamation Staff Travel	18,000	18,000	18,000
TOTAL	18,000	18,000	18,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: A.4. Facilitation Contract

General Project Description: This project represents the work assigned to one individual under contract to the Bureau of Reclamation to facilitate at Adaptive Management Work Group meetings. This person may also assist AMWG ad hoc groups in completing AMWG assignments.

Project Goals and Objectives: The facilitator's primary responsibility is to keep the AMWG meetings organized and help the members reach consensus on important issues. The facilitator creates a setting in which all members and the public are able to express their views.

Results: The facilitator will create an atmosphere in which the members and other participants at AMWG meetings feel comfortable expressing their individual viewpoints. The facilitator will bring the AMWG members to consensus on pertinent issues affecting the GCD AMP.

Budget: \$25,000

	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary	25,000	25,000	25,000
TOTAL	25,000	25,000	25,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: A.5. Other

General Project Description: This project represents some of the other “miscellaneous” expenses incurred in operation of the AMWG. For example:

- overnight mailings of AMWG meeting packets
- copying of reports
- purchasing meeting materials (cassette tapes, markers, paper, etc.)
- equipment (audio recording/transcribing machines)

In addition to the above, training courses are often required for staff to keep current on environmental issues, Federal Advisory Committee Act changes, computer technology improvements, etc.

Also included in this category are monetary awards given to Reclamation staff who have contributed significantly to the success of the GCD AMP.

Project Goals and Objectives: The primary goal is to limit spending on “other” items as much as possible. By doing so, more money can be applied to science and research.

Expected Results: Other expenses will be kept to a minimum in an effort to reduce the administrative portion of the AMP budget.

Budget: \$9,000

	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Training	4,000	4,000	4,000
Awards	2,000	2,000	2,000
Supplies/Equipment	2,000	2,000	3,000
TOTAL	8,000	11,000	9,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: B.1. Personnel Costs

This project represents Reclamation staff costs to perform the daily work activities required to operate the Technical Work Group, a subgroup of the AMWG. The work includes completing assignments resulting from TWG meetings, consulting with stakeholders on a variety of AMP issues relating to the operation of Glen Canyon Dam, disseminating pertinent information to the TWG, preparing and tracking budget expenses, and updating Reclamation’s web page.

Project Goals and Objectives: This project represents Reclamation staff costs to perform the daily work activities required to operate the Technical Work Group. The work includes completing assignments resulting from AMWG or TWG meetings, consulting with stakeholders on a variety of AMP issues relating to the operation of Glen Canyon Dam, disseminating pertinent information to the TWG, preparing and tracking budget expenses, and updating Reclamation’s web page.

Expected Results: Personnel costs will not exceed what has been proposed in the budget and Reclamation staff will provide budget information to the TWG on a regular basis. Completed work products will be promptly distributed to TWG members/alternates and interested parties.

Budget: \$81,000

	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)			
Manager	49,000	51,000	53,000
Biologist	11,000	10,000	11,000
Management Analyst	17,000	17,000	17,000
TOTAL	74,000	78,000	81,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: B.2. TWG Member Travel Reimbursement

General Project Description: This project covers the costs to reimburse TWG members or alternates to attend regularly scheduled TWG meetings.

Project Goals and Objectives: The primary goal for reimbursing travel expenses to TWG members or alternates is to encourage their attendance at all meetings. Because the meetings are often scheduled in Phoenix, Arizona, many members must incur air or personal vehicle travel. By reimbursing those and other related travel costs, e.g., hotel, per diem, rental car, etc. opportunities are increased for more members to participate in a variety of AMWG/TWG assignments.

Expected Results: The Glen Canyon Dam Adaptive Management Program will benefit from having all the TWG members participate in regularly scheduled meetings. As a collective body, they address and resolve concerns associated with the operation of Glen Canyon Dam and make recommendations to the AMWG for continued research in the canyon.

Budget: \$15,000

	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
TWG Member Travel Reimbursement	10,000	10,000	15,000
TOTAL	10,000	10,000	15,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: B.3. Reclamation Travel

General Project Description: This project covers travel expenses Reclamation staff incur to prepare and attend TWG meetings as well as ad hoc group meetings which result from AMWG/TWG assignments. In order to work on those assignments, the meetings are often held in Phoenix, Arizona, because it is centrally located to those entities/states represented on the AMWG/TWG. This often requires Reclamation staff to make additional trips throughout the year in completion of AMWG/TWG assignments.

Project Goals and Objectives: The primary goal is for Reclamation staff to be able to travel to meetings and participate in completing AMWG/TWG assignments. By doing so, the program benefits from greater interaction among its members as well as continued improvement and commitment to operating GCD in the best manner possible and for obtaining the necessary results from science work done in the canyon.

Expected Results: Reclamation staff will continue to be involved in meeting with AMWG/TWG members in completing work assignments and resolving issues that affect the operation of GCD. They will develop better working relationships with all involved and work toward consensus on a variety of AMP issues.

Budget: \$ 17,000

	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Reclamation Travel	18,000	18,000	17,000
TOTAL	18,000	18,000	17,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: B.4. TWG Chair Reimbursement

General Project Description: This project represents the work assigned to one individual under contract to the Bureau of Reclamation to act as chairperson at Technical Work Group meetings. This person may also work on AMWG/TWG ad hoc group assignments.

Project Goals and Objectives: The chairperson's primary responsibility is to conduct regularly scheduled TWG meetings. The chairperson also participates in ad hoc group assignments and works closely with Reclamation and GCMRC in setting meeting agendas. The chairperson follows up on TWG and ad hoc group assignments and ensures that information is shared with the members and alternates in a timely manner.

Expected Results: The chairperson creates an atmosphere in which the members and other participants at TWG meetings feel comfortable expressing their individual viewpoints. The chairperson will bring the TWG members to consensus on sensitive issues with the ultimate goal of doing what is best for the canyon and the natural resources. The chairperson will follow up on action items and make assignments as necessary to accomplish TWG objectives.

Budget: \$25,000

	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary	25,000	25,000	25,000
TOTAL	25,000	25,000	25,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: B.5. Other

General Project Description: This project represents some of the other “miscellaneous” expenses incurred in operation of the TWG. For example:

- overnight mailings of TWG meeting packets
- copying of reports
- purchasing meeting materials (cassette tapes, markers, paper, etc.)
- equipment (audio recording/transcribing machines)

Project Goals and Objectives: The primary goal is to limit spending on “other” items as much as possible. By doing so, more money can be spent on science and research.

Expected Results: Other expenses will be kept to a minimum in an effort to keep within the AMP budget.

Budget: \$2,000

	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Supplies	2,000	2,000	2,000
TOTAL	2,000	2,000	2,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: C. Compliance Documents

General Project Description: This project covers the costs for preparing compliance documents for AMP-proposed actions in order to comply with the Endangered Species Act, National Environmental Policy Act, and National Historic Preservation Act.

Project Goals and Objectives: Reclamation staff will keep informed on any changes to the ESA, NEPA, and NHPA and will consult with AMWG stakeholders to ensure proper compliance is made.

Expected Results: Reclamation staff will be involved in all compliance issues related to the Glen Canyon Dam Adaptive Management Program. They will utilize travel expenses to meet with the AMP stakeholders to resolve any differences.

Budget: \$26,000

	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Compliance Documents			
Biologist	26,000	26,000	26,000
TOTAL	26,000	26,000	26,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: D. Contract Specialist

General Project Description: This project covers the expenses for Reclamation staff to prepare and monitor contracts associated with the GCD AMP. Specifically, these contracts are for AMWG Facilitation, TWG Chairperson reimbursement, and Programmatic Agreement work.

Project Goals and Objectives: [Reclamation] Contract specialists will accurately apply funds spent on individual contracts to ensure costs do not exceed contract limits. They will keep other Reclamation staff informed as to those charges so accurate reporting can be made to both AMWG and TWG members.

Expected Results: Contract specialists will ensure that individual contractors are fulfilling the requirements of their contracts. They will maintain accurate records of payments made against the contracts and will keep Reclamation staff informed of discrepancies or concerns. Work will be completed on time and within the limits of the contract.

Budget: \$25,000

	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Contract Administration			
Contract Specialist (0.5 FTE)	25,000	25,000	25,000
TOTAL	25,000	25,000	25,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: IIA. TRIBAL CONSULTATION: Cooperative Agreements with Tribes

Rationale/Problem Statement: To ensure government-to-government consultation occurs between AMP tribes and AMP federal agencies.

Integration: The purpose of the continued funding of tribal cooperative agreements is to ensure tribal viewpoints are integrated into AMP dialog and the final recommendations that the AMP makes to the Secretary.

Expected Products: There is no tangible product associated with this project, except for annual reports prepared by the tribes. Rather, the product is enhanced communication and understanding of issues related to the AMP. The ultimate product should be improved recommendations being forwarded to the Secretary.

Recommended Approach: A tribal consultation plan is in preparation that will specify more details of the approach. However, the basic approach is that both tribal and agency representatives must be prepared prior to meetings by reviewing documents or researching issues or relevant viewpoints. At the meetings, all the parties must have active dialogs. Effective consultation includes both listening, explaining or discussing differing views and interests. After meetings, tribal representatives and agency representatives must report back to councils and staff or the public regarding AMP issues and concerns and recommendations.

Status: Ongoing. Continuing from the EIS.

External Project Awards: The cooperative agreements are administratively managed by Reclamation with \$75,000 in funding provided by each of the AMP agencies and supplemented by power revenues to reach the \$80,000 per tribe total.

Project Accomplishments: Maintenance of dialog, communication and government-to-government consultation.

Schedule: Agreements are modified on a fiscal year basis. A yearly status report is due to Reclamation at the close of the fiscal year. Copies of the reports may be distributed to AMP stakeholders upon request.

Budget: With five tribes or tribal groups represented (i.e. Southern Paiute Consortium), the project total cost is \$400,000. Of this, \$375,000 is from appropriations through the federal AMP agencies (USGS, BOR, NPS, BIA, USFWS).

TRIBAL PARTICIPATION	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003
Cooperative Agreements with Tribes	400,000	400,000	400,000
TOTAL	400,000	400,000	400,000

**PROJECT TITLE AND ID: IIB. TRIBAL CONSULTATION: River Trip
Logistical Costs to GCMRC**

Rationale/Problem Statement: Power revenues have paid the costs of river trip logistics of \$15,000 per tribe since Glen Canyon Environmental Studies. The trips have been used to enable the tribes to identify resources of tribal concern, including specific properties eligible to the National Register of Historic Places. This identification effort was largely completed by the mid-1990s. Since then, the trips have been used by tribes to identify how and where dam operations are impacting identified resources or properties. Not every tribe conducts an annual river trip; rather, each tribe makes a specific proposal to the NPS as the permitting agency for the work conducted each year.

Integration: The river trips enable the tribes to identify impacts of dam operations on resources of tribal concern. This enables tribal views to be identified to the other AMP stakeholders and ultimately to the Secretary of the Interior.

Expected Products: The NPS requires an annual investigator report as a condition of the river trip permits. In addition, the tribes are required to report to Reclamation as part of their cooperative agreement annual report. The minimum requirement is a statement whether conditions within the river corridor were stable, improving or worsening. As a nominal variable, this can then be tracked over time to measure trends.

Recommended Approach: Reclamation takes power revenues and transfers the money to GCMRC for the direct logistical costs of the river trips. The costs of the trips have been limited to no more than \$15,000 per tribe per year. This limits the number of days and mode of transportation. The tribes are allowed to select the approach they take to the trips within this cost constrain and meeting NPS minimum tool requirements.

Status: Ongoing.

External Project Awards: None.

Project Accomplishments: Tribes have been able to identify resources or properties and to determine where and how dam operations affect those resources. This information will be used to develop treatment or mitigation plans for the array of resources of concern.

Schedule: A report is submitted to the NPS and Reclamation as a result of any trips undertaken during the year.

Budget: \$15,000 per tribe for a total of \$75,000.

TRIBAL PARTICIPATION	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003
River Trip Logistical Costs to GCMRC			75,000
TOTAL			75,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: III.1. PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENT: NAGPRA Affiliation Work.

Rationale/Problem Statement: NAGPRA's implementing regulations state that whenever possible, Federal agencies should enter into comprehensive agreements with Indian tribes that are affiliated with specific human remains, funerary objects, sacred objects, or objects of cultural patrimony and that have claimed or are likely to claim those cultural items should they be excavated or discovered inadvertently on Federal lands. For the AMP, these agreements are an NPS responsibility within Grand and Glen Canyons; however, to ensure that it is possible to enter into a comprehensive agreement before likely archaeological data recovery begins in FY04, the AMP can help expedite this process by contracting for one of the lines of evidence for cultural affiliation. (The lines of evidence include geography, kinship, biology, archeology, anthropology, linguistics, folklore, oral tradition, history, or expert opinion.) The funds listed here would be used to contract for one or more of these lines of evidence in addition to what the NPS may prepare.

Integration: The major integration of this project is with the NPS's management and compliance responsibilities. The purpose of the integration is to ensure that the necessary products are completed on time for AMP and PA purposes.

Expected Products: This sum of money will only provide enough funds to contract for one or a few of the lines of evidence. This product will become part of a larger compiled report resulting in a comprehensive agreement and Plan of Action.

Recommended Approach: Issue a contract for one of the lines of evidence needed to make a determination of cultural affiliation for Glen and Grand Canyons and cultural items that are likely to be uncovered during FY04 data recovery.

Status: New project, although part of larger work efforts by NPS and Reclamation.

External Project Awards: Expect to issue a contract, requisition, or other procurement.

Project Accomplishments: Documentation of a line of evidence for cultural affiliation of the tribes with cultural items likely to be uncovered.

Schedule: One-year award. Product due at end of fiscal year. Larger compiled report to be prepared by federal agencies.

Budget: \$25,000

PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENT	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003
NAGPRA Affiliation			25,000
TOTAL			25,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: III.2. PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENT:
Reclamation Administrative Costs for Programmatic Agreement

Rationale/Problem Statement: The project is to fund Reclamation's administration of the PA program. The purpose of the funds is to pay for salary, travel, and indirect costs. Reclamation's Regional Archaeologist travels to AMP meetings including PA, TWG, and AMWG. In addition to travel expenses, there is administrative time preparing for and documenting meetings. A major portion of the administrative expenses revolves around maintaining cooperative agreements with the NPS and tribes. In addition, there are contract expenses associated with the work projects listed here.

Integration: The costs help integrate the PA into the larger AMP.

Expected Products: The major product is accountability for the cooperative agreements and use of both appropriated dollars and power revenues. In addition, products include dialogs and communication at meetings.

Recommended Approach: Compliance with the Federal Acquisition Regulation and other accountability laws, regulations, and policies is the recommended approach.

Status: Ongoing.

External Project Awards: Cooperative agreements with tribes and NPS.

Project Accomplishments: Moving towards completion of the stipulations in the programmatic agreement.

Schedule: The schedule is a continuation of previous work within the fiscal year.

Budget:

PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENTS	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003
Salary			49,825
TOTAL	50,000	50,000	49,825

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: III.2. PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENT: Mapping Actual Areas Affected by Dam Operations

Rationale/Problem Statement: New information provided by the physical science program of GCMRC has indicated that it is both theoretically feasible and cost effective to map or model actual areas within the Colorado floodplain that are affected by fluvial processes related to dam operations. A panel of geomorphologists and soil erosion experts with knowledge of the local ecosystem will be brought together in FY02 to ascertain what would be involved in such a mapping or modeling effort. If the costs and time frames they propose are reasonable, then this project will be funded in FY03 and potentially extended in FY04.

Integration: This will integrate physical science with the cultural resource compliance program.

Expected Products: A isopleth map showing the statistical probability that given areas will be impacted by dam operations of a specified flow or hydrology.

Recommended Approach: Unknown, based on recommendations from geomorphologists and soil erosion scientists convened as a panel in FY02.

Status: Contingent on advice from geomorphology/soil erosion workshop or panel.

External Project Awards: This will be contracted if determined feasible.

Project Accomplishments: This will result in a mapping of the areas actually impacted by dam operations.

Schedule: The schedule cannot be determined at this time; however, preliminary information from geomorphologists has indicated that the project could be completed in two years. This would be the first year of the two-year study.

Budget: The budget is an estimate; however, if descriptive field studies are presently costing \$200,000 it seems reasonable to project that this amount would be needed for a more refined approach.

PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENT	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003
Mapping Actual Areas Affected by Dam Operations			200,000
TOTAL			200,000

**PROJECT TITLE AND ID: III.2. PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENT: NPS
Monitoring Costs**

Rationale/Problem Statement: The monitoring program of the Grand Canyon National Park is designed largely to provide information about which historic properties located within the area of potential effect of dam operations are affected or are likely to be adversely affected by dam operations. Minor stabilization or preservation treatments are also conducted under this program.

Glen Canyon's project is conducting nature and extent testing to determine National Register eligibility of sites in the Glen Canyon National Recreation Area.

Integration: Not applicable.

Expected Products: Annual reports on monitoring from Grand Canyon. Glen Canyon's products are determinations of eligibility for the National Register.

Recommended Approach: Ongoing monitoring and nature and extent testing following the Secretary of the Interior Standards and Guidelines for Historic Preservation and guidance of the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation.

Status: Ongoing.

External Project Awards: Cooperative agreements

Project Accomplishments: Glen Canyon is completing nature and extent testing for National Register eligibility; Grand Canyon is monitoring to determined effects of dam operations.

Schedule: The schedule is based on the fiscal year.

Budget: The monitoring costs are \$201,000 for Grand Canyon and \$27,500 for Glen Canyon.

PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENTS	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003
NPS Monitoring Costs			
Grand Canyon	221,000	201,000	201,000
Glen Canyon	27,500	27,500	27,500
TOTAL	248,500	228,500	228,500

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: III.2. PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENT: Contract for a Treatment and Monitoring Plan

Rationale/Problem Statement: The regulations for compliance with section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act, coupled with the guidance of the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation, require Reclamation to consult to develop and evaluate alternatives or modifications to federal undertakings, in this case dam operations, that could avoid, minimize, or mitigate adverse effects on historic properties. The methods to avoid, minimize or mitigate effects of dam operations will be described in a treatment and monitoring plan. While many kinds of treatment are possible, in those cases where archeological data recovery is the selected form of mitigation, the plan shall include (but not be limited to):

The research questions to be addressed:

- Why the research questions are worth addressing in the public interest;
- Why it is likely that the research questions can be addressed using data from the specific property;
- The methods used in fieldwork and analysis, with an explanation of their relevance to the research questions;
- The methods used to conservation, data management, and dissemination of data, with a justification for any unusual methods, and including a schedule;
- How the recovered materials and records will be disposed of, taking into account applicable tribal and NPS concerns and policies;
- How the PA and AMP shall be kept informed of the progress of data recovery, and how they will be afforded opportunities to participate in the data recovery efforts;
- A schedule for completing the data recovery, including analysis, reporting and disposition of materials and records.

Integration: The major integration will be with the physical science program due to the emphasis on geomorphological research questions and the issues of site formation processes.

Expected Products: A treatment and monitoring plan that will guide all activities over the next five years.

Recommended Approach: Contract for a treatment plan that meets the Secretary of the Interior Standards and Guidelines for Historic Preservation and guidance of the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation.

Status: New contract.

External Project Awards: Contract

Project Accomplishments: This will result in a five-year plan for resolution of adverse effects of dam operations.

Schedule: The schedule is based on the fiscal year.

Budget: The contract is estimated to cost \$200,000; however, it will be put out for bid in the Commerce Business Daily.

PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENTS	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003
Contract for a Monitoring and Treatment Plan			200,000
TOTAL			200,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: IIA. TRIBAL CONSULTATION: Cooperative Agreements

Rationale/Problem Statement: Government-to-government consultation will be maintained between the five AMP tribes (Hopi Tribe, Hualapai Tribe, Southern Paiute Consortium, Pueblo of Zuni, Navajo Nation) and five Interior agencies (US Geological Survey, National Park Service, Reclamation, US Fish and Wildlife Service, and Bureau of Indian Affairs).

Integration: The purpose of the continued funding of tribal cooperative agreements is to ensure tribal viewpoints are integrated into continuing AMP dialogs, votes, and in the final recommendations made to the Secretary of the Interior.

Expected Products: The most important product is the incorporation of tribal perspectives into the recommendations forwarded to the Secretary. In addition, the tribes prepare annual reports on activities funded under the cooperative agreements. Continued funding of government-to-government consultation through the agreements ensured enhanced communication and understanding of AMP issues and concerns.

Recommended Approach: A tribal consultation plan will be completed during FY02 that may modify the current approach and will be an appendix to the AMP Strategic Plan.

Status: Ongoing. Continuing from the EIS.

External Project Awards: The cooperative agreements are administratively managed by Reclamation with funding provided by each of the Interior AMP agencies and supplemented by power revenues.

Project Accomplishments: Communication and government-to-government consultation between agencies, tribes, and other AMP stakeholders.

Schedule: Agreements are modified on a fiscal year basis. Each funded tribe must submit a yearly status report to Reclamation at the close of the fiscal year. Copies of the reports may be distributed to AMP stakeholders upon request.

Budget: The cost is \$400,000 annually to fund the cooperative agreements. In FY03 and FY04, with each agency contributing \$95,000, the tribal river trips (next project) will no longer be paid out of power revenues; rather, the river trip cost are listed here.

TRIBAL PARTICIPATION	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Agency contributions	125,000	375,000	475,000	475,000
Power revenues	275,000	25,000	0	0
TOTAL	400,000	400,000	400,000	400,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: IIB. TRIBAL CONSULTATION: River Trip
Logistical Costs to GCMRC

Rationale/Problem Statement: River trips, at a logistical cost of \$15,000 per tribe, have been funded using power revenues to enable the tribes to identify resources of tribal concern, including traditional cultural properties eligible to the National Register of Historic Places. This identification effort was largely completed by the mid-1990s. Since then, the trips have been used by tribes to identify how and where dam operations are impacting identified resources or properties.

Integration: River trips enable the tribes to identify impacts of dam operations on resources of tribal concern. Based on river trip observations, tribes identify concerns to other AMP stakeholders and ultimately to the Secretary of the Interior.

Expected Products: As the permitting agency, NPS requires an annual investigator report from each tribe conducting a river trip. In addition, the tribes are required to report to Reclamation or the AMP as a whole whether conditions within the river corridor were stable, improving or worsening. As a nominal variable, this can then be tracked over time to measure trends.

Recommended Approach: River trip costs have been limited to \$15,000 per tribe per year. The tribes are allowed to select the approach they take to the trips within this cost constrain and meeting NPS minimum tool requirements.

Status: Ongoing.

External Project Awards: None.

Project Accomplishments: Tribes have been able to identify resources or properties and to determine where and how dam operations affect those resources. This information will be used to develop treatment or mitigation plans.

Schedule: A report is submitted to the NPS as a result of any trips undertaken during the year.

Budget: \$15,000 per tribe for a total of \$75,000 transferred to GCMRC.

River Trip Logistics	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Agency contributions	0	0	75,000	75,000
Power revenues	75,000	75,000	0	0
TOTAL	75,000	75,000	75,000	75,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: III.2. PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENT:
Reclamation Administrative Costs for Programmatic Agreement

Rationale/Problem Statement: Reclamation's regional archeologist administers the PA program and tribal consultation cooperative agreements and river trip fund transfers to GCMRC. This project funds salary, travel, and indirect costs of program administration.

Integration: The costs help integrate the PA and tribal consultation into the larger AMP.

Expected Products: The major product is accountability for the cooperative agreements and use of both appropriated dollars and power revenues.

Recommended Approach: Compliance with the Federal Acquisition Regulation and other accountability laws, regulations, and policies is the recommended approach.

Status: Ongoing.

External Project Awards: Cooperative agreements with tribes and NPS.

Project Accomplishments: Moving towards completion of the stipulations in the programmatic agreement.

Schedule: The schedule is a continuation of previous work within the fiscal year.

Budget: The budget has been capped at \$50,000 per year which is ca. half an FTE.

PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENTS	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary and Indirect costs	50,000	50,000	50,000	50,000
TOTAL	50,000	50,000	50,000	50,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: III.2. PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENT: Mapping Actual Areas Affected by Dam Operations

Rationale/Problem Statement: The physical science program of GCMRC has indicated that fluvial effects of dam operations are mostly limited to Marble Canyon; however, eolian processes may affect historic properties throughout the CRE. The problem is to map and model where these processes may cause changes in the character or use of historic properties.

Integration: This will integrate physical science with the cultural resource compliance program.

Expected Products: The original product planned was a white paper on processes linking dam operations with changes in historic properties; however, during FY02, it was decided to fund an actual study of eolian processes rather than a workshop. Funds from the workshop were transferred to the GCMRC physical science program for this study. Expected products are 1: a map showing the existing eolian deposits; 2) an examination of eolian deposits that fill arroyos; 3) wind and sand-transport measurements; and 4) modeling of how measured winds would deposit sand on historic properties if sand bars were larger or less vegetated.

Recommended Approach: The workshop has been replaced by an unsolicited proposal that is expected to be funded using FY02 dollars. If the initial pilot project in FY02 proves useful, then the additional funds may be allocated in FY03, depending upon a budget submittal to GCMRC.

Status: Contingent on the results of the FY02 work.

External Project Awards: This will be contracted to qualified geomorphologists and sediment transport specialists.

Project Accomplishments: This will result in a mapping of historic properties and areas affected by dam operations.

Schedule: The project is slightly behind schedule; however, the contract should be awarded by mid-to late June; with some results before the end of the calendar year. If the work appears useful, then additional funds will be allocated during FY03.

Budget: The budget is an estimate at this time.

PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENT	FY-2002	FY-2003
Geomorphology workshop/study	40,000	
Contract extension?		150,000
TOTAL	40,000	150,000

**PROJECT TITLE AND ID: III.2. PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENT: NPS
Monitoring Costs**

Rationale/Problem Statement: The monitoring program of the Grand Canyon National Park is designed largely to provide information about which historic properties located within the area of potential effect of dam operations are affected or are likely to be adversely affected by dam operations. Minor stabilization or preservation treatments are also conducted under this program.

Glen Canyon's project is conducting nature and extent testing to determine National Register eligibility of sites in the Glen Canyon National Recreation Area.

Integration: Not applicable.

Expected Products: Annual reports on monitoring from Grand Canyon. Glen Canyon's products are determinations of eligibility for the National Register.

Recommended Approach: Ongoing monitoring and nature-and-extent testing following the Secretary of the Interior Standards and Guidelines for Historic Preservation and guidance of the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation.

Status: Ongoing.

External Project Awards: Cooperative agreements

Project Accomplishments: Glen Canyon is completing testing for National Register eligibility; Grand Canyon is monitoring to determine effects of dam operations.

Schedule: The schedule is based on the fiscal year.

Budget: The monitoring costs are \$201,000 for Grand Canyon and \$28,000 for Glen Canyon.

PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENTS	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
NPS Monitoring Costs				
Grand Canyon	221,000	201,000	201,000	201,000
Glen Canyon	27,500	28,000	28,000	28,000
TOTAL	248,500	229,000	229,000	229,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: III.2. PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENT: Contract for a Treatment and Monitoring Plan

Rationale/Problem Statement: The regulations for compliance with section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act require Reclamation to develop and evaluate alternatives or modifications to dam operations that could avoid, minimize, or mitigate adverse effects on historic properties. The specific methods selected for this purpose will be described in a treatment and monitoring plan.

While many kinds of treatment are possible, in those cases where archeological data recovery is the selected form of mitigation, the plan shall include (but not be limited to):

The research questions to be addressed:

- Why the research questions are worth addressing in the public interest;
- Why it is likely that the research questions can be addressed using data from the specific property;
- The methods used in fieldwork and analysis, with an explanation of their relevance to the research questions;
- The methods used to conservation, data management, and dissemination of data, with a justification for any unusual methods, and including a schedule;
- How the recovered materials and records will be disposed of, taking into account applicable tribal and NPS concerns and policies;
- How the PA and AMP shall be kept informed of the progress of data recovery, and how they will be afforded opportunities to participate in the data recovery efforts;
- A schedule for completing the data recovery, including analysis, reporting and disposition of materials and records.

Integration: The major integration will be with the physical science program due to the emphasis on geomorphological research questions and the issues of site formation processes.

Expected Products: A treatment and monitoring plan that will guide all activities over the next five years.

Recommended Approach: Contract for a treatment plan that meets the Secretary of the Interior Standards and Guidelines for Historic Preservation and guidance of the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation.

Status: New contract.

External Project Awards: Contract

Project Accomplishments: This will result in a five-year plan for resolution of adverse effects of dam operations.

Schedule: The schedule is based on the fiscal year.

Budget: The contract is estimated to cost \$160,000 and will be competitively contracted following the Federal Acquisition Regulation.

PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENTS	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003
Contract for a Monitoring and Treatment Plan			100,000
Conduct nature and extent testing			60,000
TOTAL			160,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: IV. Experimental Flow Fund

Rationale/Problem Statement: A core concept in the Glen Canyon Dam Adaptive Management Program is experimentation to identify the cause and effect relationships between dam operations and resource impacts. Past examples include the 1996 Beach Habitat Building Flow and the 2000 Low Steady Summer Flow. Historically, we have spent about \$2 - 3 million on scientific monitoring and research activities during these experimental flows. Sufficient funding is required in the future to support these experiments. Since the future amount of funds available from power revenues is limited by the FY 2001 appropriations bill, additional appropriations have been sought to fund tribal participation and consultation, thus making available power revenues previous used to fund the tribes.

Project Goals and Objectives: GCRMC and the TWG Experimental Flow ad hoc group is developing an integrated program of experimentation that addresses current information needs related to sediment conservation, riparian vegetation management and Biological Opinion compliance. The experimental flow fund would finance this program. A financial carry-over account has been established in Reclamation for these funds. Funds would be accumulated each year until there is a sufficient account balance to support the scientific activities.

Status: As of December 2001, the account has a balance of \$125,000, the result of Department of the Interior appropriations offsetting power revenues for tribal participation and consultation. Additional power revenue funds will be added to the fund in FY 2002 within the funding cap on the use of power revenues.

Budget: \$500,000

Reclamation Administrative Costs	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2003
Contracts	0	382,000	500,000
TOTAL	0	382,000	500,000



United States Department of the Interior
U.S. GEOLOGICAL SURVEY
GRAND CANYON MONITORING AND RESEARCH CENTER
2255 NORTH GEMINI DRIVE, MS-5000
FLAGSTAFF, ARIZONA 86001
928 556-7094 Telephone
928 556-7092 Fax
www.gcmrc.gov

June 17, 2002

MEMORANDUM

To: Regional Director, U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, Salt Lake City, UT
Attn: UC-700

From: David E. Busch, Acting Chief

Subject: Adaptive Management Work Group Meeting Materials (July 17-18, 2002)

Attached are the following materials for distribution to the AMWG prior to the July 17-18, 2002, meeting:

- GCMRC/TWG Experimental Flows Outline and Process for Completing a Science Plan
- GCMRC FY2004 Monitoring and Research Plan and Budget (final, dated June 14, 2002)

Also, we request 15 minutes on the agenda to discuss the proposed reorganization of the GCMRC into a larger southwest science center.

Attachments:

Producing a Science Plan for Water Year 2002-03 Experimental Flows (draft, dated June 8, 2002)
GCMRC 2004 Monitoring and Research Plan and Budget (final, dated June 14, 2002)

cc: GCMRC Program Managers (GCMR-720, -730, -740, -750)

THE GRAND CANYON MONITORING AND RESEARCH CENTER

FISCAL YEAR 2004

MONITORING AND RESEARCH WORK PLAN

by

THE GRAND CANYON MONITORING AND RESEARCH CENTER

Lewis Coggins
Chris Flaccus
Carol Fritzing
Steve Gloss
Barry D. Gold
F. Mark Gonzales
Susan Hueftle
Vickie Kieffer
Ruth Lambert
Michael Liszewski
Serena Mankiller
Theodore S. Melis
Steven Mietz
Barbara Ralston
Bill Vernieu
Stephanie Wyse
Mike Yard

June 14, 2002

FINAL

GRAND CANYON MONITORING AND RESEARCH CENTER
FY 2004 MONITORING AND RESEARCH WORK PLAN

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1: THE GCMRC FY 2004 ANNUAL WORK PLAN

INTRODUCTION	1
GEOGRAPHIC SCOPE	1
GRAND CANYON MONITORING AND RESEARCH CENTER (GCMRC)	3
Mission.....	3
Roles and Responsibilities	3
ENSURING OBJECTIVE, QUALITY SCIENCE.....	4
GCMRC SCIENTIFIC ACTIVITIES	5
CURRENT KNOWLEDGE	6
Sediment and Stream Flow Resources.....	6
Terrestrial Resources.....	11
Aquatic Resources.....	14
Integrated Water Quality Program.....	16
Socio-Cultural Resources.....	17
Information Technologies Program (ITP)	21
Data Base Management System (DBMS).....	21
Geographic Information System (GIS).....	22
Library.....	23
Surveying	23
Systems Administration.....	26
Remote Sensing.....	26
MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES AND INFORMATION NEEDS	28
Introduction.....	28
Historical Development of the Management Objectives and Information Needs.....	28
Revision Process	28
PROTOCOL EVALUATION PROGRAM.....	29
CONTINGENCY PLANNING	29
SCIENCE SYMPOSIUM	30
FUTURE CHALLENGES	30
SCHEDULE AND BUDGET.....	31
Budget Review	31

<u>CHAPTER 2: SCIENTIFIC ACTIVITIES</u>	33
<u>A. TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEM ACTIVITIES</u>	39
<u>ONGOING PROJECTS</u>	
A.1. TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEM MONITORING	39
A.1. CULTURAL COMPONENT—TRIBAL PARTICIPATION	47
A.2. MONITORING KANAB AMBERSNAIL AND HABITAT AT VASEY’S PARADISE.....	50
A.3. NEW RESEARCH IN TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEMS	54
A.4. MAPPING HOLOCENE TERRACES	55
A.5. CULTURAL DATA BASE PLAN.....	58
A.6. KANAB AMBERSNAIL TAXONOMY	64
<u>B. AQUATIC ECOSYSTEM ACTIVITIES</u>	67
<u>ONGOING PROJECTS</u>	
B.1. MONITORING AQUATIC FOODBASE – EXTERNAL.....	67
B.2. MONITORING AQUATIC FOODBASE – IN-HOUSE	67
B.3. MONITORING OF THE STATUS AND TRENDS OF DOWNSTREAM FISH COMMUNITY	72
B.4. MONITORING OF THE STATUS AND TRENDS OF THE LEES FERRY TROUT FISHERY	77
B.5. INTEGRATED WATER QUALITY MONITORING: DOWNSTREAM ACTIVITIES	81
B.6. INTEGRATED WATER QUALITY MONITORING: LAKE POWELL.....	83
<u>NEW PROJECTS</u>	
B.7. NEW RESEARCH ASSOCIATED INTERACTIONS BETWEEN NATIVE AND NON-NATIVE FISH SPECIES	86
B.8. CAPTIVE BREEDING PROGRAM	89

C. INTEGRATED TERRESTRIAL AND AQUATIC ECOSYSTEM ACTIVITIES91

ONGOING PROJECTS

C.1.a. INTEGRATED LONG-TERM MONITORING OF FINE-GRAINED SEDIMENT STORAGE THROUGHOUT THE MAIN CHANNEL.....91

C.1.b. RECREATIONAL COMPONENT—MONITORING CAMPING BEACHES ...99

C.2. INTEGRATED LONG-TERM MONITORING OF STREAMFLOW AND FINE-SEDIMENT TRANSPORT IN THE MAIN CHANNEL COLORADO, PARIA AND LITTLE COLORADO RIVERS101

C.3. INTEGRATED LONG-TERM MONITORING OF COARSE-GRAINED SEDIMENT INPUTS, STORAGE AND IMPACTS TO PHYSICAL HABITATS110

C.4. INTEGRATED STREAM FLOW AND SUSPENDED-SEDIMENT TRANSPORT MODELING WITHIN THE COLORADO RIVER ECOSYSTEM115

 C.4.A. (Part A) MODELING REACH-AVERAGED SAND BAR EVOLUTION IN RESPONSE TO A RANGE OF DISCHARGE AND SEDIMENT CONDITIONS ALONG THE MAIN CHANNEL.....115

 C.4.B. (Part B) DEVELOPMENT OF A ONE-DIMENSIONAL FINE SEDIMENT-ROUTING MODEL ALONG THE MAIN CHANNEL118

C.5. DEVELOPMENT OF A CRE CONTROL NETWORK123

C.6. DEVELOPMENT OF CRE HYDROGRAPHIC MAPPING PROGRAM.....126

NEW PROJECTS

C.7. LITTLE COLORADO RIVER (LCR) INTEGRATED STUDIES129

D. OTHER SCIENCE ACTIVITIES130

D.1. UNSOLICITED PROPOSALS130

D.2. AMWG & TWG REQUESTS133

D.3. IN-HOUSE RESEARCH.....134

D.4. TRIBAL OUTREACH: TRIBAL TRAINING, SCIENCE/TRIBAL PERSPECTIVE INTEGRATION/TRIBAL INTERNS134

D.5. PUBLIC OUTREACH / INVOLVEMENT PLAN136

D.6. CULTURAL RESOURCE SYNTHESIS AND STATUS REPORT138

NEW PROJECTS

D.7. ORAL TRADITION AND FOLKLORE SYNTHESIS AND EVALUATION ...	140
D.8. EXPERIMENTAL FLOWS	143

CHAPTER 3: ADMINISTRATION AND TECHNICAL SUPPORT SERVICES.....148

INTRODUCTION	148
GCMRC ADMINISTRATION	148
E. Administrative and Management	149
E.1. Administrative Operations	149
E.2. Program Planning and Management	150
E.3. AMWG/TWG Participation.....	151
E.4. Independent Review Panels	152
F. Technical Support Services	155
F.1. Geographic Information Systems	157
F.2. Data Base Management System.....	159
F.3. Library Operations	161
F.4. Survey Operations.....	164
F.5. Decision Support System.....	167
F.6. System Administration.....	168
F.7. Aerial Photography	169
F.8. Logistics.....	172
GCMRC BUDGET.....	174
Program Schedule	175
REFERENCES CITED.....	176

APPENDICES

1. AMWG Mission and Vision, Principles and Management Objectives	180
2. FY 2004 Project Titles and Associated Management Objectives.....	187
3. GCD AMP Project Descriptions for Fiscal Year 2004	197

LIST OF TABLES

2.1 Master Project Schedule	34
2.2 FY2004 Funding Sources	36
2.3 Summary Table of Projected FY 2004 Budget	37
2.4 Experimental Design, Long-Term Sequence of Treatments.....	146

LIST OF FIGURES

1.1 Map Of The GCMRC Study Area	2
3.1 Schematic Illustrating the Relationship of Various Information Technology Program Functions to the GCMRC Monitoring and Research Program and the AMWG and TWG	157

CHAPTER 1

THE GCMRC FY 2004 ANNUAL WORK PLAN

INTRODUCTION

The Fiscal Year 2004 (FY 2004) Grand Canyon Monitoring and Research Center (GCMRC) Work Plan describes scientific activities intended to provide the information needed to address the management objectives developed by the Adaptive Management Work Group (AMWG). These management objectives have been recommended by the AMWG to the Secretary of the Interior to meet the intent of the 1992 Grand Canyon Protection Act (GCPA), and the Record of Decision (ROD, 1996) for the final Environmental Impact Statement on the operations of Glen Canyon Dam (GCDEIS, 1995).

GEOGRAPHIC SCOPE

The geographic scope of the Adaptive Management Program is the Colorado River mainstem corridor and interacting resources in associated riparian and terrace zones, located primarily from the forebay of Glen Canyon Dam to the western boundary of Grand Canyon National Park (Figure 1.1). It includes the area where dam operations impact physical, biological, recreational, cultural, and other resources. The scope of Adaptive Management Program activities may include limited investigations into some tributaries (e.g., the Little Colorado and Paria Rivers). The lateral scope is an issue of ongoing research and investigation to determine where the effects of dam operations are located along the floodplain. The Adaptive Management Program may do research outside the geographic scope defined above to obtain needed information. Such linkages with other areas “should be made on a case-by-case basis, considering ecosystem processes, management alternatives, funding sources, and stakeholder interests.” (National Research Council 1999:43; Loveless 2000)

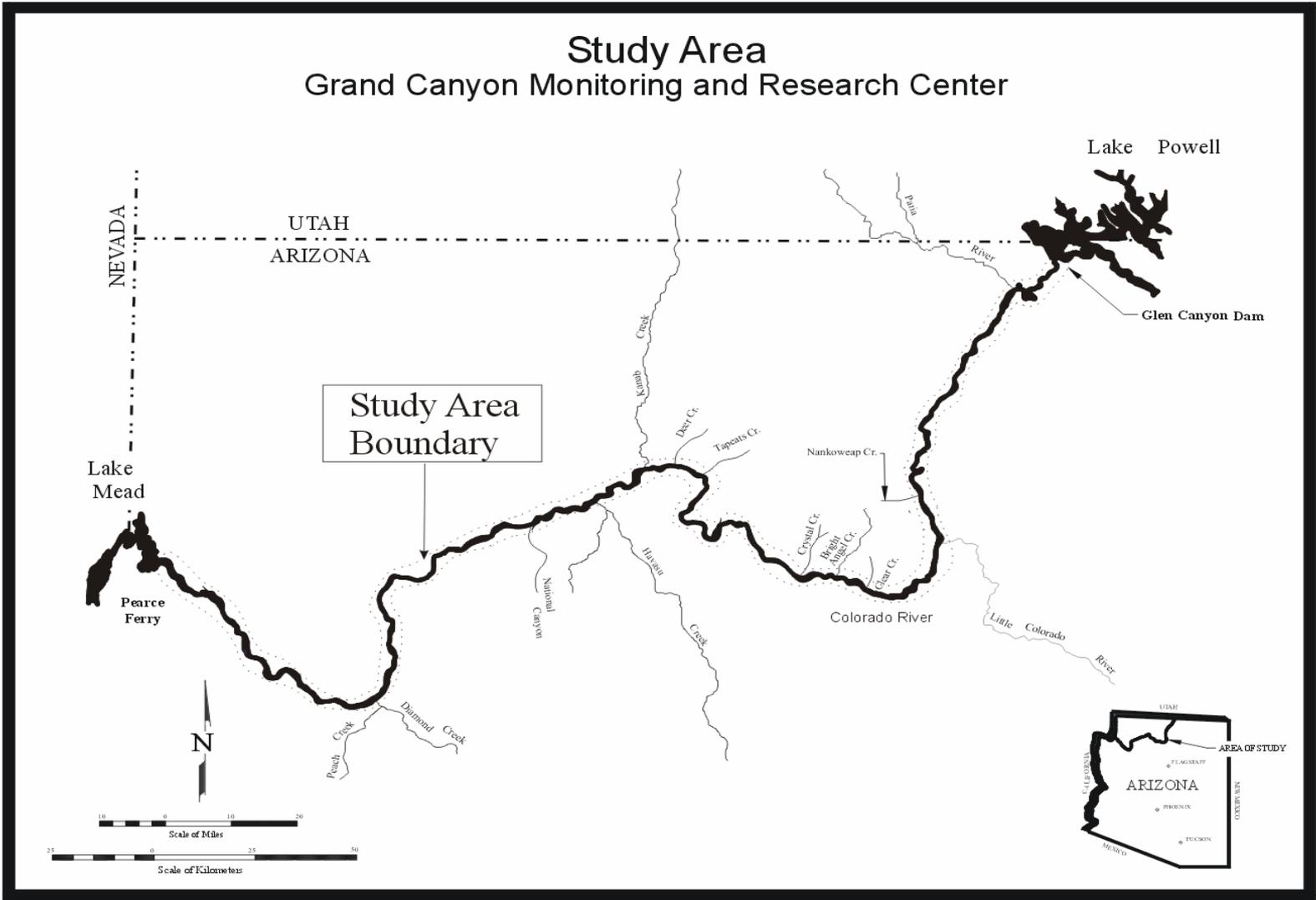


Figure 1.1. Map of Grand Canyon Monitoring and Research Center Study Area.

GCMRC scientific activities are intended to determine the effects of Record of Decision (ROD) dam operations and other management actions primarily on downstream natural, recreational, and cultural resources of the Colorado River Ecosystem (CRE). GCMRC activities include limited investigations into tributaries (e.g., the Little Colorado and Paria Rivers) and reservoirs (e.g., Lake Powell). The AMWG, in drawing these boundaries on the geographic scope of GCMR scientific activities, acknowledge that these constraints may inhibit the ability to distinguish the effects of dam operations on CRE resources from other effects. Therefore, scientific information from programs outside the GCDAMP may be needed as a means of strengthening the understanding of the entire CRE. For additional information on programmatic and institutional scope of the Adaptive Management Program, please refer to the AMWG Strategic Plan on the web (http://www.uc.usbr.gov/amp/amwg/02jan17/Attach_06.pdf).

GRAND CANYON MONITORING AND RESEARCH CENTER (GCMRC)

Mission

The GCDEIS direct the Secretary of the Interior, “To establish and implement long-term monitoring programs and activities that will ensure that Glen Canyon Dam is operated in a manner consistent with that of Section 1802...” of the GCPA. The mission of the GCMRC is:

To provide credible, objective scientific information to the Glen Canyon Dam Adaptive Management Program on the effects of operating Glen Canyon Dam under the Record of Decision and other management actions on the downstream resources of the Colorado River ecosystem, utilizing an ecosystem science approach.

Roles And Responsibilities

1. Advocate quality, objective science and the use of that science in the adaptive management decision process.
2. Provide scientific information for all resources of concern identified in the “Operation of Glen Canyon Dam Final Environmental Impact Statement.”
3. Support the Secretary’s designee and the Adaptive Management Work Group in a technical advisory role.

4. Develop research designs and proposals for implementing, by GCMRC and/or its contractors, monitoring and research activities in support of information needs identified by the Adaptive Management Work Group.
5. Coordinate review of the monitoring and research program with independent review panel(s).
6. Coordinate, prepare, and distribute technical reports and documentation for review and as final products.
7. Prepare and forward technical management recommendations and annual reports, as specified in Section 1804 of the Grand Canyon Protection Act to the Technical Work Group.
8. Manage all data collected as part of the Adaptive Management Program. Serve as a repository (source of information) for others (stakeholders, students, public, etc.) in various formats (paper, electronic, etc.) about the effects of operating Glen Canyon Dam on the downstream resources of the Colorado River ecosystem and the Adaptive Management Program.
9. Administer research proposals through a competitive contract process, as appropriate.
10. Manage GCMRC finances and personnel efficiently and effectively.

ENSURING OBJECTIVE, QUALITY SCIENCE

The GCMRC was established to provide objective, high quality scientific information to the Secretary of the Interior and to the AMWG. To accomplish these goals, specific operating protocols for GCMRC were established.¹ The quality and objectivity of GCMRC research findings is ensured through competition and independent external scientific peer review.² All proposals, data, reports, etc., are reviewed by independent, external scientists as well as by the GCMRC science team.

¹ Operating Protocols for GCMRC, June, 1996.

² GCMRC Peer Review Guidelines, October 26, 2001.

GCMRC SCIENTIFIC ACTIVITIES

The FY 2004 Work Plan describes monitoring and research activities that address the management objectives (MOs) and information needs (INs)³ of the GCDAMP. Long-term monitoring is designed to determine changes in resource attributes. Research is used to improve monitoring, interpret and explain trends observed from monitoring to determine cause-and-effect relationships and research associations, and to better define interrelationships among physical, biological and social processes.

Monitoring and research efforts have been defined in the 12/14/01 draft Information Needs document as:

- A) Core Monitoring Information Need (CMIN): Core monitoring is consistent, long-term, repeated measurements using set protocols and is designed to establish status and trends in meeting specific management objectives. Core monitoring is implemented on a fixed schedule regardless of variable factors or circumstances (e.g., water year, experimental flows, temperature control, stocking strategy, non-native control, etc.) affecting target resources.

- B) Effects Monitoring Information Need (EIN): Effects monitoring is the collection of data associated with an experiment performed under the Record of Decision, unanticipated event, or other management action. Changes in resource conditions measured by effects monitoring generally will be short-term responses. The purpose of effects monitoring is to supplement the fixed schedule and variables collected under core monitoring. This will both increase the understanding of the resource status and trends and provide a research opportunity to discover the effect of the experiment or management action.

- C) Research Information Need (RIN): Research can be descriptive or experimental. When descriptive it describes relationships in the Colorado River ecosystem (e.g., describe trophic interactions in the aquatic ecosystem). When experimental it tests specific hypotheses for determining and understanding cause-and-effect relationships between dam operations, or other driving variables, and resource responses (e.g., how is the abundance and composition of benthic invertebrates affected by grazers, predators and dam operations?). Research requires a purposeful design with established statistical criteria, including allowable errors for accepting and rejecting null hypotheses. Research may also result in the collection of data that can be used to help determine or refine Core Monitoring Information Needs.

³ The MOs and the IN's are currently undergoing revision. This Work Plan references the draft revised MOs. The INs are being revised and they are not included in this document. See the following section for a description of the revision process and see Appendix One for the AMWG vision and mission, principles, and the current MOs.

D) Supporting Information Need (SIN): A Supporting Information Need contributes to understanding the basis for a resource response and its link to other management goals.

E) Other Definitions Are:

- Status and Trends: Status refers to the condition of a resource at a given time or place. Trends refer to a statistically-based temporal or spatial series for a given resource, during the periods and at the locations where data was collected.
- Cause and Effect: Cause and effect assigns a resource response to a particular event(s) or driving variable(s).

In addition, GCMRC operates an information technologies program. The information technologies program is intended to ensure information management (e.g., DBMS, GIS, Library), data analysis (e.g., GIS), and data dissemination to managers and stakeholders and science organizations (e.g., WWW). GCMRC also operates a surveying department to provide consistent, quality, cost-effective support to monitoring and research projects. Finally, GCMRC operates a logistics program to provide cost-effective support to scientific field activities.

CURRENT KNOWLEDGE

Sediment and Stream Flow Resources:

Overview of Monitoring - Existing management actions taken through WY 2002, under the Record of Decision have failed to meet even the expectations contained in the Glen Canyon Dam EIS that, compared to the no action alternative, the preferred alternative would result in sand resources in the CRE increasing over time. The basic finding of the mass-balance project team is that downstream transport of new sand inputs occurs much more rapidly than was previously predicted by the Glen Canyon Dam EIS writing team (Rubin et al., in press). The rapid export of new sand inputs measured during 1999 through 2001, from sediment-starved upstream reaches such as Marble Canyon, indicates that the ecosystem's sand supply does not become progressively enriched over multi-year periods, except during periods when monthly release volumes are at about 700,000 acre feet or lower. If most ROD dam operations prevent new sand

inputs from accumulating within the river channel, then re-deposition of new sand inputs cannot occur during occasional controlled floods, termed “Beach/Habitat-Building Flows.” Such periodic releases are intended to restore and maintain sand bars that have experienced erosion since dam closure. Suggested alternatives for better conserving new sand inputs include timing the release of bar-building floods to more closely follow significant periods of sand input from tributaries. Another alternative is to schedule BHBF releases during periods when ROD operations at Glen Canyon Dam reflect below-average basin-hydrology conditions.

Fine-Sediment Mass Balance - Results of sand-transport mass-balance calculations for the period of fall 1999 through September 2000, show that sand loads passing the Grand Canyon gage, located 102 miles downstream of Glen Canyon Dam, exceeded total estimated tributary inputs; except during the period of June through August 2000 (Low Summer Steady Flow test), when dam operations were held constant at 8,000 cfs. Sand mass-balance data for October 2000 through November 2001, do show evidence of multi-year accumulation of sand upstream of Phantom Ranch (river mile 87), in response to an approximate 1,000,000 metric ton input of sand from the Paria River in October 2000, in combination with relatively low-flow releases from Glen Canyon Dam throughout Water Year 2001. Additional sand inputs from the tributaries that occur during Water Year 2002, are expected to accumulate in the channel bed, providing that monthly volume releases from the Dam remain consistent with an 8.23 MAF release schedule.

Fully Integrated Sediment Team (FIST) - Individual sand bar data collected from 1990 through fall 2001, show that sand bars in the actively fluctuating zone (8,000 to 25,000 cfs), and above the 25,000 cfs stage within Marble Canyon (river miles 0-61) have continued to decline since 1990, despite bar restoration gains achieved by the Beach/Habitat-Building Flow test of 1996, and peak power-plant test flows released in November 1997 and May and September 2000. Although high-elevation sand bars (above 25,000 cfs) below river mile 61 (Grand Canyon) appear to be in somewhat better condition in 2000 versus 1990, than bars in Marble Canyon, deposits within the actively fluctuating zone continue to show decline throughout the ecosystem. The sand-bar time series (1990 through 2001) suggests that the long-term fate of beaches in the upper,

critical reaches of the ecosystem will likely be in continued decline under current ROD operations. Beach data collected in fall 2001 show dramatic declines in bar conditions at many sites within the first 100 miles below the dam. The most probable reason for the continuing decline of sand bars appears to be related to depletion of the ecosystem's sediment supply. This trend might be reversed if new fine-sediment inputs from tributaries can be managed more strategically using combinations of power-plant operations and BHBF's following tributary floods. Declining beach trends correlate with the findings of the sediment mass-balance project that indicate that new sand inputs from tributaries are transported downstream relatively quickly rather than being retained throughout the river channel and periodically re-deposited on diminishing bars.

Coarse-Grained Inputs and Impacts - Webb and others, of the USGS, have estimated lesser tributary contributions for both fine and coarse sediments between Glen Canyon Dam and Upper Lake Mead. They find that fine sediment inputs from the Glen and Marble Canyon reaches of the ecosystem are, on average, likely to be a factor of two greater than the estimate used by the EIS writing team in preparing the fine-sediment mass balance reported in the GCD-EIS. Although the fine sediment inputs into this critical upstream reach may be significantly higher than previously assumed, the grain-size data published in the report indicate that those sediment inputs are as fine or finer than inputs from the Paria River. This finding suggests that while sand inputs from ungaged sources are significant and worth monitoring for management purposes, these inputs likely have a short residence time in critical reaches, similar to those sand inputs derived from the Paria River (see section on Mass Balance, above). This is important information that further supports development of a fine-sediment budget for the ecosystem, as well as technical discussions about how best to conserve fine sediment inputs through dam operations. Perhaps more importantly to the ecosystem, lesser tributaries below Lees Ferry continue to input fine-to-coarse size gravel into the main channel. The implications for these ongoing, accumulated gravel inputs is still being studied, but several possibilities exist for how these deposits may influence the aquatic and terrestrial elements of the Colorado River ecosystem: 1) aggradation of the channel's rapids leading to increased navigational challenges, but also expanded eddies where sand can accumulate, 2) aggradation of low-velocity pools and higher velocity runs, with

potential changes to aquatic food base dynamics, 3) increased spatial abundance of fine gravels that effectively expand spawning and rearing habitats throughout the main channel in Marble and Grand Canyons, 4) burial and/or erosion of existing sand bars during debris flows and stream-flow floods.

A long-term monitoring program for coarse-sediment inputs and impacts throughout the ecosystem was initiated in FY 2001, although coarse-sediment inputs from lesser tributaries have been studied since 1984. The current annual monitoring effort for coarse sediment inputs is also intended to document the occurrence of periodic debris flows within 735 lesser tributaries, where and when they occur. The project is also focused on documenting how such coarse-sediment inputs alter the geomorphic framework of the river by directly impacting both sediment and non-sediment resources of the ecosystem at hundreds of locations through time under dam operations. This project represents one of the lead participants in the Advanced Conceptual Modeling project that was conducted from FY 2001 through 2003 (see below).

Sediment-Transport Modeling – Research to develop a 1-dimensional sand routing model to predict the fate of tributary sand inputs, and a multi-dimensional model for sand-bar evolution was initiated in FY 2002, by a group composed of researchers from the USGS, Johns Hopkins University and Utah State University. This project is using a combination of field and laboratory methods, including flume studies, to refine an algorithm that estimates the degree of channel-bed winnowing that occurs following tributary flooding from the Paria and Little Colorado Rivers. This predictive capability shall allow managers to more accurately predict the rate at which new fine-sediment inputs are depleted (through downstream transport) following enrichment of the ecosystem's sand supply. This information can assist in developing experimental flow treatments intended to test additional hypotheses related to sand-bar conservation and maintenance. Further refinement of the team's previous sand-bar simulation model shall also allow for better predictions about how new sand inputs are mobilized from the river's channel bed and deposited along channel margins within and outside of eddies. This type of simulation shall allow managers to more clearly identify the extent to which sand bars in specific river segments can be restored and maintained using BHBF's under a variety of flow and sediment-supply conditions.

Results of Geomorphic Synthesis Research – This research project was initiated in FY 1998, and was completed in FY 2002. The objective of this research was to provide managers with a comprehensive synthesis of all historical data on hydrology, sediment-transport and geomorphology related to the Colorado River ecosystem between Glen Canyon Dam (located about 15 miles upstream of Lees Ferry) and the Grand Canyon gage, located at river mile 87. This research was undertaken by members of the USGS in collaboration with Utah State University. Results are too numerous to include in this planning document, but are briefly summarized as -- **for Marble and Grand Canyon's:** 1a) Compression of the river's flood frequency following initial operation of the power plant (reduced low and high flows) was increased following implementation of the interim flow and ROD operations, resulting in higher sand transport occurring more of the time. As a result, new inputs of sand from downstream tributaries does not have a long residence time in the low-elevation portions of the main channel; 1b) Sand storage within main channel pools and eddies responds to changes in operations driven by upper basin hydrology and storage conditions within Lake Powell; 1c) The overall style of historical sand-bar change derived from sand-bar mapping (area changes only) within continuous river segments closely follows the time series for individual sand bars (measured for area and volume changes) throughout Marble Canyon from 1990 through 2001; 1d) Historical erosion of sand bars within Marble Canyon is most dramatic in terms of loss of bar volumes (vertical changes) rather than bar areas, and may have occurred mostly as a result of wind deflation. The condition of bars upstream of river mile 87, continues to be degraded and will likely remain so until such time that new sand inputs are effectively deposited at higher elevations along shorelines; 1e) Overall, since 1983, sand resources along the shorelines of the Colorado River ecosystem have been reduced by about 25 percent. **Glen Canyon:** 2a) In response to operation of Glen Canyon Dam, the channel bed of this river segment has been deeply incised and has been armored owing to removal of most of the fine sediment and much of the gravel that resided there prior to dam construction. This information was derived from repeat measurements of cross-sections established by the Bureau of Reclamation (USBR) in the 1950s as well as sedimentology of the pre-dam versus 2000 condition of the channel bed; 2b) As a result of channel incision and armoring, the top-width of the channel (at flows of 5,000 to 8,000

cfs) has narrowed, probably as a result of sand being eroded down slope from higher channel margin deposits; 2c) Lateral retreat of pre-dam river terraces is only detectable from air-photo mapping at a limited number of sites; 2d) Scour of pools in the this segment of the river appears to be ongoing in response to dam operations, even in the post-EIS period.

Advanced Conceptual Modeling Research – This research effort was initiated in FY 2001, and is scheduled to be completed in FY 2003. The objective of the project was to develop longer-range simulation about how ongoing tributary inputs of sediment coarser than sand (63-2000 microns) might influence the physical and biological processes within the Colorado River ecosystem. Years 2-3, include field studies to provide data on food base dynamics at channel elements (coarse-grained gravel bars and cobble islands) under varied flow conditions, and under conditions of aggradation by coarse-sediment tributary inputs. Additional modeling efforts are being conducted by the USGS to simulate physical changes that occur within rapid/pool/run complexes following tributary debris flows. Such impacts are thought to force aggradation of rapids with only partial reworking from Glen Canyon Dam operations; the result being that the coarsest sediment is deposited within low-velocity pools between rapids and runs. Workshops are scheduled for FY 2003 and FY 2004, that incorporate the results from this project into the conceptual model of the Colorado River ecosystem developed in FY 1998-2000.

Terrestrial Resources: Specific terrestrial resources of interest to the adaptive management program include riparian vegetation, riparian breeding birds and waterfowl, Kanab ambersnail, and invertebrates, small mammals, and reptiles associated with the river corridor. As a whole, approaches for monitoring terrestrial biologic resources underwent review in late 1999 (KAS expert panel) and 2000 (Urqhart, 2000), in the form of expert panels and protocol review panels. Recommendations from these reviews were incorporated into 2001 monitoring and research plans and continue to be evaluated and implemented in 2004.

With respect to riparian vegetation, a review of previous studies and their applicability to monitoring, as well as the information that these studies provide for assessing change, was completed in 2001 (Kearsley and Ayers, 2001). Power analysis of

historic data indicates that change detection of vegetation attributes varied by vegetation type and parameter measured (e.g., species richness, density). For example, changes in cover can be detected within a year's time for mixed scrub, but changes in diversity for the same community type may take over 20 years. In most cases, change was detectable within five years of measurement. Areas of high density, single species composition were more likely to show little change compared to mixed communities and would require longer time periods for change detection. Knowing the length of time needed to detect change is critical in addressing management objectives associated with the riparian communities identified by the adaptive management program.

Kearsley and Ayers' (2001) analysis also indicated that the minimum number of sites needed to detect change is between 30 and 70, depending on the type of vegetation (Kearsley and Ayers, 2001). The report also indicated that previous sites over-represented some types of vegetation (e.g., tamarisk) and under-represented others (e.g., seep willow). These analyses support recommendations from the terrestrial review panel (Urqhart, 2000) that recommended expanding riparian vegetation surveys from something greater than 11 sites, and include a randomized site selection within a GIS framework in order to detect change among vegetation communities. These data and recommendations were incorporated into the monitoring and inventory program for terrestrial resources, resulting in expanded sampling coverage for vegetation within a random, reach-based sampling program that is linked to other terrestrial resources, specifically, birds as well as reptiles and mammals.

Riparian breeding birds, including southwest willow flycatcher, and over-wintering waterfowl continue to be monitored using point-count and walking surveys. In FY2001, this program was combined with vegetation monitoring and insect, reptile and mammal inventories to provide an integrated picture of the terrestrial resources and long-term patterns associated with these resources and Glen Canyon Dam operations. Year-to-year variability exists for the 18 most common bird species that represented at least 10% of the total number of birds detected for years 1998-2000. Significant distributional shifts occurred for four species each year between 1998 and 2000, although these species were not the same each year. Several new winter records were reported for waterfowl during the 1998-2000 period, including Barrow's goldeneye, horned grebe, trumpeter swan, red-

breasted merganser and long-tailed duck, among others. Variables affecting waterfowl numbers include turbidity and reach width. Diving species increase as turbidity declines and dabbler species increase with increasing reach width (Spence, 2001).

Initial studies associated with birds and invertebrate food sources (Yard and Cobb, 2001) indicate that abundance and composition changes occur in the arthropod community throughout the period that riparian birds are active in the river corridor. Arthropod abundances in both old and new high water zone vegetation decline between early May to early June. The leafhopper, an insect common on tamarisk is the most abundant arthropod, representing a significant contribution to the insect densities in both the old and new high water zones. However, removal of this leafhopper from the analysis indicates that insect densities become greater in the old high water zone (Yard and Cobb, 2001), suggesting that the old high water zone still provide a large portion of food resources to riparian birds within the Colorado River ecosystem. Arthropod richness did not differ between these zones. Lastly, birds found foraging in the old high water zone were significantly linked to the arthropod community found in the old high water zone, more than birds that forage in new high water zone vegetation. These data provide potential to consider arthropods as indicators of bird abundance. Results of the two-year project will become available in 2002, following review of the submitted report.

Lastly, Kanab ambersnail monitoring at Vasey's Paradise has continued to follow the protocols begun 1997. Data collection efforts have been reduced from 4 trips per year to two trips: one in spring and one in fall. Population estimates for the snail indicate that the snail numbers vary widely throughout the year (10,000 in the spring to 100,000+ in the fall), influenced by climatic and concomitant habitat variability (SWCA, 1999). Genetic analysis of the snail at Vasey's Paradise and other snails assumed to be related to KAS suggest that the Vasey's Paradise taxon is less related to the Three Lakes population than other populations collected within the Colorado Plateau and more closely allied with samples of *Oxyloma* species from Canada and the Great Plains (Stevens et al., 2000). While the genetic distance between the Three Lakes and Vasey's populations is greater than expected, these taxa are more similar morphologically than between Three Lakes and other snails sampled from the Kanab Creek drainage. More genetic and morphologic analysis of the *Oxyloma* complex resulting in taxonomic revision is needed to resolve

management questions around the Vasey's Paradise taxon. This analysis will be pursued in a new RFP to be issued by GCMRC in late 2002.

Aquatic Resources: Aquatic resources continue to undergo review of methodologies and historic data and incorporation of new methods into monitoring the sport fishery, the native fish communities and water quality monitoring. Protocol review panels were held for the water quality program (Ruane et al., 2001), the Lees Ferry trout fishery (Culver et al., 2000) and for the aquatic program (Bradford et al., 2001), which includes the mainstem fishery downstream of Lees Ferry, and the aquatic food base program also downstream of Lees Ferry. Recommendations include increasing random sampling efforts, strengthening efforts associated with integration across disciplines and developing modeling efforts. The aquatic foodbase program issued a new RFP in FY 2002 which resulted in only one proposal and will be reissued in late FY 2002 to increase competition and encourage new approaches consistent with the PEP recommendations. As a result of cooperator sampling (NPS at Glen Canyon National Recreation Area) there has recently been confirmation of a new invasive aquatic species in the CRE. The New Zealand Mud Snail, *Potamopyrgus antipodarum*, was first confirmed in the Glen Canyon reach and has now been documented throughout the CRE. This species attains very high densities in some stream and river systems and is known to occur in 5-6 populations in the U.S. The species will be the subject of future monitoring and research in the CRE. The water quality program is in the process of incorporating recommendations into a revised program, and the downstream fishery and food base program is also incorporating panel suggestions into the development of monitoring programs for these resources.

The Lees Ferry trout fishery has developed a stock assessment model using historic angling data and catch effort data from past monitoring efforts. The model provides a three-to five-year view of the state of this fishery resource and provides an opportunity to evaluate management strategies associated with this fishery (Speas et al., 2001). The monitoring program that is in place through a cooperative effort between GCMRC and Arizona Game and Fish includes the historic fixed sampling sites and new random, stratified sites based on shoreline type. The program's design is intended to increase sampling areas to better characterize the trout fishery as a whole. Current

population estimates for the Lees Ferry trout indicate that the size of trout has declined from 400 mm in the early 1990s to an average of 325 in 1999, while the numbers of fish in the reach has increased. These data indicate that the fishery is strongly influenced by diel changes in flows and that growth is density dependent. The stable flows associated with ROD operations has increased recruitment and the increased numbers of fish has resulted in smaller fish (Speas et al., 2001).

The downstream fishery program has approached the development of a long-term monitoring program in a step-wise fashion to allow for analysis of historic data and to ensure that new monitoring protocols address adaptive management program needs. Steps that have been taken in the downstream fishery program include development of population estimates for rainbow trout (ca. 743,000 individuals) and brown trout (ca. 56,000 individuals) in the mainstem (AGFD, 2001) and for humpback chub in the LCR and its confluence with the mainstem (Coggins and Walters, 2001). Preliminary analysis of data associated with humpback chub in the LCR indicates that population numbers have declined since 1991 from approximately 6,500 (fish > 150 mm) to approximately 2100 (fish > 150mm) in 2000 (Coggins and Walters, 2002). This downward trend in population abundance is based on an estimated decline in recruitment to the population beginning in 1992. Multiple hypotheses exist for the apparent recruitment decline including dam operations, tributary flooding, parasitism, predation/competition and mainstem temperature effects.

Monitoring efforts in FY 2004 and FY 2005 include beginning to establish population estimates for carp and increasing the tagging record started for humpback chub with values for flannelmouth sucker and bluehead suckers. Further work is needed to determine appropriate methods to quantify changes in small-bodied fish that are most effectively caught by seining return channels but that may not effectively represent their numbers within the river corridor. The FY 2002-03 downstream fish sampling efforts will be the most extensive and expansive undertaken since GCMRC's effort to develop new monitoring protocols was implemented. This is also true for the LCR.

Integrated Water Quality Program: Downstream water quality sampling has been aimed primarily at establishing a robust record of mainstem temperature data under different flow conditions. Much of the downstream water quality program has been undergoing redesign and reconsideration in light of the recent PEP report and the development of a new five-year plan for the Integrated Water Quality Program presented to the TWG in 2002.

The Low Steady Summer Flows (LSSF) experiment during the summer of 2000 pre-empted much of the IWQP research originally slated for 2000-2001. These LSSF projects included thermal monitoring in the forebay, hypolimnion and inflows in Lake Powell and enhanced thermal monitoring in the mainstem and channel margins of the Colorado River in Grand Canyon.

Results for the LSSF were presented in the Science Symposium in April 2001, including talks entitled “Thermal Dynamics of Lake Powell and its Inflow: Patterns During the LSSF Experiment and Beyond” and “Main Channel and Near-Shore Warming of the Colorado River Under Low Steady Summer Flows.” Dilute and mixed conditions in Lake Powell during the summer of 2000 diminished the measurable effects of internal seiching (oscillation of lake strata) that influence the water quality properties of dam discharges. While this homogeneity reduced our ability to discern dam-operation induced seiches associated with the steady releases, wind-driven seiches produced pronounced effects immediately following storm events that attenuated within 0.5 to 1 day. Oscillations were greatest at the surface, and synchronization was identified up to 90 km apart, from Wahweap to Oak Canyon.

In the mainstem, during the Low Steady Summer Flows of 2000, the highest temperatures in at least the last decade were observed in Grand Canyon, reaching nearly 20 deg. C at Diamond Creek. This reflected a warming of 10 deg. C above Glen Canyon Dam release temperatures, compared to a warming of 5 deg. C during the high steady flows of 1997, showing a strong inverse correlation of instream warming with discharge level. Warming of over 7 deg. C above main channel river temperature occurred in some main channel near-shore environments; in backwater habitats, warming of over 12 deg C above river temperatures was observed. This near-shore warming was dependent on incident solar radiation, and little or no water velocity.

The 30-year-plus data base for Lake Powell is being automated for access through GCMRC's database system. These data are also being input to the CE Qual Water Quality model in cooperation with the USBR. Eventually there is the prospect that simulation modeling may replace some of the extensive field sampling effort on the reservoir. In addition GCMRC is increasing its cooperation with the Glen Canyon National Recreation Area (NPS) in an effort to reduce GCMRC costs for this program. Recent changes to the reservoir monitoring program include the addition of several continuous thermal monitoring stations in the lake. Tidbit© thermistors are located at the inflow areas of the Colorado River (Sheep Canyon) and San Juan River (Mike's Canyon), logging temperature at 15-minute intervals. In addition, a Hydrolab Recorder monitors temperature, specific conductance, pH and dissolved oxygen at the Sheep Canyon buoy. Four specially designated water quality buoys have been installed at the Wahweap, Padre Bay, Oak and Escalante stations. These buoys assist in collection efforts at these deep-water stations as well as act as a platform for any deployments of continuous monitors. Chlorophyll sampling protocols have been amended under recommendations of the PEP. Preservation has shifted from the in-field dry-ice freezing method to the simpler and more effective desiccation with reusable silica gel crystals. Greater efforts to keep samples darkened during and after processing have been made. Greater vertical resolution of the chlorophyll samples lake-wide has been implemented, along with some reduction in vertical resolution of the chemical samples throughout the lake, excepting inflow areas. TOC, total organic carbon, measurements have been added to DOC measurements already being taken in the inflow areas of the lake.

Socio-Cultural Resources:

Cultural Resources: Cultural resources of interest to the AMP along the Colorado River corridor include archaeological sites and traditional cultural resources such as springs, landforms, sediment and mineral deposits, and traditional plant locations and animals. The goal of the cultural resource efforts is *in-situ* preservation with minimal impact to the integrity of the resources, and when preservation is not possible, treatment efforts as appropriate. Monitoring activities include site visits, photography, and remedial

activities and tribal assessments of traditional cultural resources and the general health of the ecosystem through traditional perspectives.

Cultural resources are monitored regularly and during high flow events. Many of the archaeological resources along the river corridor are contained in the sediment deposits that form the alluvial terraces. Since the completion of Glen Canyon Dam, the sediment resource has declined, and the alluvial terraces continue to erode. A system-wide method for regenerating the river terraces and redistributing sediment is generally considered an essential component to maintaining integrity for cultural resources (Balsom, 1996).

Previous Investigations: The 1996 BHBF presented an opportunity to study the effects of high flow discharge from Glen Canyon Dam on alluvial terraces and margin deposits along the river corridor. The flow was expected to provide system-wide mitigation to most cultural sites in the Colorado River corridor through the accumulation of additional sediment and the overall findings of the cultural resources studies strongly suggest that the 45,000 cfs BHBF flow had either no effect, no adverse effect, or a beneficial effect on cultural resources. These findings support the original contention that beach habitat-building flows can offer a system-wide mitigation for cultural resources. Some locations, especially in the Glen Canyon reach, did experience loss of sediments or re-deposition of sediments in a way that, in the long run, could be detrimental to cultural resources (Balsom, 1996). Recent research in the physical resources area (see pages 10 through 14) indicates that the timing of BHBFs relative to tributary inputs is the most beneficial.

Completed GCMRC projects provide additional information. These projects include a synthesis of data collected by the NPS and Tribal groups, mainstem flow and deposition modeling, and testing of a geomorphic erosional hypothesis. The data synthesis report (Neal et al., 2000) identifies data gaps in previously collected data. A stage flow and deposition modeling project provides information on estimated sediment deposition at selected archaeological resource locations given particular water releases and modeled sediment loads. These modeled data can be used to analyze available information on pre-dam processes that affected cultural site preservation. A draft report is currently under review and will be finalized soon (Wiele, 2001, draft report). A

geomorphic report (Thompson and Potochnik, 2000) attempted to identify erosional processes that are related to dam operations versus naturally-occurring processes. The results of this study indicate that questions remain in distinguishing resource impacts that are related to dam operations. Efforts to investigate and identify these processes are currently under discussion. Finally, a cultural resource protocol evaluation panel (PEP) was held during Spring 2000. The panel's report (Doelle et al., 2000) provided GCMRC and USBR with a series of recommendations for program coordination and future activities. The work activities undertaken in 2001 and 2002 and some of those described in this plan reflect the PEP recommendations (see projects A.7, E.4, and E.5).

Ongoing Investigations: Current resource monitoring of archaeological and traditional resources suggests that archaeological resources continue to be impacted by physical impacts such as surface erosion and gullyng in both the Grand and Glen Canyon areas. Some surface erosion is due to natural processes that are unrelated to dam operations. Other sediment loss from erosional processes is believed to be related to dam operations. Mainstem water levels and head cutting arroyos appear to impact archaeological sites at specific locations. Of the 91 sites monitored by the NPS, 83% (N=75) had physical impacts. Visitor impacts such as trailing and collection of artifacts have also been noted at archaeological sites and locations of traditional importance. Approximately 28% (N=25) of the sites monitored had visitor impacts (Kunde et al., 2001).

Monitoring of traditional plant resources occurred by tribal groups under the Programmatic Agreement (PA) program. Graffiti at two rock art sites were observed by the Southern Paiute Consortium (Drye et al., 2001) and visitor impacts were observed at two important Navajo sites (Begay, 2001). Monitoring by the Southern Paiute Consortium indicated that plant resources at 75% (9 of 12) of the sites seemed to be flourishing and that there was no evidence of disturbance or impacts. Concerns continue to be expressed for the Goodding Willow at Granite Park relative to erosion at the base of the tree (Drye et al., 2001). An ethnobotanical report compiled and synthesized by the Hopi Tribe expressed concern for water releases and sediment availability to sustain important riparian resources for plants important for ceremonies that are directly related to the overall welfare and health of the Hopi people (Lomaomvaya et al., 2001). Finally,

the Southern Paiute Consortium continues to implement its educational outreach program to tribal members who cannot visit the river corridor and to the public through workshops, training sessions and the production of a plant reference guidebook (Austin et al., 2000).

Recreational Resources:

Recreational resources encompass several elements including camping beaches, trout sport fishing, recreational river trips and safety, and recreational experiences. GCMRC has supported studies in all of these areas.

Previous Investigations. Beaches and sand bars serve as campsites for rafting groups and are highly valued based on size, boat mooring quality, wind protection, access to side canyon hikes, scenery, and shade. Historically, these beaches were replenished annually by sand and silt transported by the river during spring runoff. Since this sediment now settles out in Lake Powell, the beaches downstream are eroding due to the river's clear, sediment-free flows (Kearsley et al., 1994). Most pre-dam beaches are now considerably smaller, and some have disappeared completely. Camping beaches are also being eroded through gullying induced by monsoon rainstorm runoff, a phenomenon believed to be related to the lowered mainstem base levels as degraded beaches are not replenished by annual flooding.

In 1994, change in campable area was analyzed from an inventory of campsites using past aerial photographs (Kearsley et al., 1994). The effects of the 1996 controlled flood on campsites were evaluated and it was found that the increase in the number and size of campsites was of short duration. These data suggest that floods temporarily increase campsite number and size but then campsites will continue to erode slowly. The flood effects to campsites seem temporary but they appear to be the only feasible means of depositing sediment above normal fluctuations (Kearsley et al., 1999).

Recent and Ongoing Investigations: Recent GCMRC studies have assessed camping beaches, trout fishing activities and recreational river running and the related experiences and safety issues. An on-going effort is studying campsite assessment and monitoring protocols that are used for quantitative beach and sand bar measurements and the detection of area and volume change. The report on this work will be available in

FY2002. In addition, annual monitoring of 34 campsite areas is on-going. Interim results from this monitoring indicate that camping areas continue to slowly erode. However, the erosion can be offset by flows greater than powerplant capacity combined with adequate sediment supply (Hazel et al., 2001). A more complete discussion of sediment monitoring is found in the previous sediment resources section for fine-sediment storage and sand bar monitoring.

A previous study assessed recreational preferences relative to experiences and camping beaches (Stewart et al., 2000). Based on user surveys, this study indicates recreational preferences for camping beaches and activities such as white water rafting, day-use rafting in Glen Canyon, and fishing and recreation experiences.

Low Steady Summer Flows in summer, 2000, provided additional data on recreational experiences, travel times, safety and economic impacts to concessionaires. Draft reports have been received and are currently under review. These data will be available in FY 2002. Recreational fishing data was compiled and synthesized in FY 2001. The final draft report for this study is currently being reviewed and the results of this study will be available in FY 2002.

Information Technologies Program (ITP):

Data Base Management System (DBMS): The DBMS is the first of three fundamental technologies for consolidating, storing, and distributing data gathered as part of monitoring and research projects at GCMRC. Its purpose is to store all tabular data available in electronic form and to reference additional data that is either not available in electronic form or is not tabular (e.g., digital imagery). The Oracle data base engine was selected for GCMRC data base development. Oracle is a state-of-the-art data storage and delivery system that can function either as a centralized or distributed data base and incorporates a high degree of information technology integration. The DBMS program is currently working on bringing together years of disparate historical data collected by multiple entities located in databases across the southwest, in an organized fashion and then deliver it transparently to stakeholders and researchers for decision making and modeling purposes. A key aspect of this work has been integrating Oracle's database management software with the Center's ARC/INFO GIS, so that all tabular data sets can be viewed and queried in a spatial context.

After several failed attempts at contracting for an Oracle database developer to advise us on overall infrastructure and design issues, we are now negotiating with the Center for Data Insight (CDI) located at Northern Arizona University to assist in these activities through a cooperative agreement. The CDI has experience working with large disparate datasets in a research environment on an Oracle platform. A requirements analysis describing the data management framework of the database has been developed. It is anticipated that a pilot project that demonstrates the look, feel, and functionality of the completed DBMS using a subset of GCMRC data will be completed by the end of February 2003. After completion of this pilot project, remaining data collection efforts at the Center will be prioritized and integrated with the database design, and corresponding data sets imported.

Geographic Information System (GIS): The GIS is the second of three fundamental technologies for consolidating, storing, and distributing data gathered as part of monitoring and research projects at GCMRC. Its purpose is to store and analyze spatial data. The ESRI Arc/Info spatial data base engine was selected for GCMRC spatial data development. Efforts are now underway to integrate this data into the oracle DBMS. Historical and current GCMRC and contributor data as well as recent remotely sensed imagery and topography data sets are now available on the GCMRC FTP site (accessible from the GCMRC web page or directly at <ftp.gcmrc.gov>) in the /data/basedata subdirectory.

GIS is an important analytical tool for change detection of biological, cultural, and physical data. The GCMRC is working to increase the GIS coverage of the CRE by using modern remote sensing techniques including light detection and ranging (LIDAR) mapping techniques for topography and airborne GPS control for digital orthophotography development.

Working with other IT programs, the GIS department has also developed data standards for consistent delivery of data and an archive structure to store all GIS layers, imagery, database tables, and library reports.

Library: The library is the third of three fundamental technologies for consolidating, storing, and distributing data gathered as part of monitoring and research projects at GCMRC. Its purpose is to store hardcopy reports, maps, videos, and photographs as well as other miscellaneous documents. Although the nature of library materials is generally hardcopy, efforts are being made to catalog materials on-line. The Follet library catalog software was selected for this purpose. You can access the Follet library catalog from the GCMRC website at www.gcmrc.gov. Currently, all hardcopy reports and books pertaining to the CRE are searchable electronically using the on-line catalog. Other materials will be added as time permits. Efforts are underway to digitize historical library materials so that they may be distributed electronically via the Internet. The library has also implemented a consistent peer review process to help ensure the quality of scientific reports submitted in partial fulfillment of contract and cooperative agreement requirements. The GCMRC library continues to make strides in organization and accessibility. Accomplishments to date include the following:

- New materials are being cataloged as they arrive.
- Reports were subject to peer review before they were made available to the public.
- Electronic versions of reports were archived in the library and made available on the FTP (accessible from the GCMRC web page or directly at ftp.gcmrc.gov) site for electronic distribution to stakeholders and the public.
- An archive structure was created for electronic data that will be used in the Oracle database.

The library is, for the most part, fully functional. In addition to serving patrons, FY2004 activities will focus on converting historical library materials to electronic form for distribution via the Internet.

Surveying: The GCMRC survey department provides support to GCMRC scientists and investigators for spatially referencing data collected in the field. In addition, the survey department provides terrestrial and hydrographic base maps and maintains a network of survey control throughout the ecosystem.

Terrestrial base maps: Prior to 2001, GCMRC had sub-meter accuracy terrestrial topographic maps of approximately 80 miles of the ecosystem in 17 areas of concentrated scientific effort that have been referred to as GIS sites. GCMRC also has similar topographic maps from GCD to Badger Rapid near river mile (RM) 8 derived from our LIDAR evaluation in 1998. In FY2000, the GCMRC collected high-resolution orthophotography and topography of the entire CRE. This dataset provides one-foot resolution geo-referenced and rectified imagery and one meter interval contour maps as well as a four-meter digital elevation model. This data set was delivered, inspected, and incorporated into the GCMRC FTP site (accessible from the GCMRC web page or directly at ftp.gcmrc.gov) in the /data/orthophotos and /data/lidar subdirectories. In addition to sub-meter terrestrial base maps described above, we have high-resolution field surveys of 35 sand bar sites that have been repeated at varying intervals since 1991. We also have numerous field surveys of vegetation, cultural, and endangered species habitat such as KAS surveys. Additional sub-meter accuracy terrestrial topographic coverage needs to be obtained for the remainder of the ecosystem.

Hydrographic base maps: The hydrographic mapping program was established for the purpose of producing a sub-aqueous channel map of the Colorado River within the ecosystem. Hydrographic mapping supports several GCMRC scientific initiatives including: streamflow and fine-grained sediment transport, fine-grained sediment storage, streamflows and suspended sediment modeling, advanced conceptual modeling of coarse grained sediment, fish habitat mapping, and measuring changes in morphology and topography of the sub-aqueous canyon ecosystem. We currently have low resolution (20 meter transects) single beam base data from GDC to Badger Rapid, and GIS Site 7. We currently have single beam data (10 meter square) repeated since 1993 at 35 NAU sand bar sites (Hazel et al., 1999; Kaplinski, 2000), repeated surveys from Paria (RM 1) to Cathedral Wash (RM 3), 4 large pool sites in Site 5 (Wiele, 1998), 5 repeated surveys in RM 42-43 and RM 62-65 to monitor the 1996 flood, and a pre- and post-flood survey on the Lake Mead Delta. We also have high resolution (multi-beam) surveys in the pools from RM 1-3, RM 9-11, 29-42, and 45-68. Additional channel mapping of all of the remaining river channel needs to be obtained as control is established. In FY2001, hydrographic channel data was collected for approximately 30

additional miles of the CRE. This data will be processed in FY2002 and an additional 30 miles will be collected and processed.

Canyon control: Survey control in the Colorado River ecosystem is required to meet the demands of any spatial measurements for scientific monitoring and research. Survey control also supports the spatial positioning of hydrographic and bathymetric channel mapping as well as ground control for aerial mapping or remote sensing applications. We currently have approximately eight A order GPS grade base stations set on the rim of the Grand Canyon. This base station network is currently in good order to complete the control in the Canyon. We additionally have continuous traverse control (point-to-point line of sight) from GDC to RM 72. Downstream from RM 72 there is continuous traverse control that was surveyed for the GCES GIS sites. In addition there is continuous traverse control from the LCR confluence to Blue Springs, approximately 14 miles of the LCR. The GCMRC Survey department objective is to complete the continuous control network in the Canyon by end of calendar year 2006.

In early 2001, preliminary DTM data from LIDAR measurements showed some inconsistencies in comparable ground measurements. The ground measurements referenced control from the existing CRE control network. The LIDAR data referenced the newly established NGS rim control standard. The inconsistencies are a result of the unavailability of accurate GPS base stations when the original GCES control was established. The remote sensing initiative is requiring an upgrade of the existing coordinate values. This will allow a comparison of remotely sensed data and CRE legacy data can be accurately used for change detection. Furthermore, current data collection on the ground requires updated coordinate values for change detection.

In order to meet GCMRC's positioning needs, the existing control reference system must be continually enhanced to provide the high accuracy required for use with GPS and conventional measurements. In association with National Geodetic Survey, GCMRC has established a GPS control network of monumented points having three-dimensional positions. This control network is the positional infrastructure for all surveying, mapping, and remote sensing operations in the Grand Canyon that are implemented by GCMRC. Project objectives for the observations are to ensure 2-

centimeter local accuracy and 5-centimeter accuracy overall. This additional work is described in the Development of a CRE Control Network section of Chapter 2.

Systems Administration: Systems Administration encompasses the entire computing and networking environment at the GCMRC. The core computing environment is, for the most part, fully implemented with the exception of the database management system, the Internet map server, and the World Wide Web server. It is anticipated that significant progress will be made in the non-fully implemented areas in 2002 with the staff additions of a full-time system administrator and Oracle consultant in 2001.

Remote Sensing: There are currently two aspects to GCMRC remote sensing: (1) remotely sensed data collection, and (2) the remote sensing initiative entitled “*Evaluating ground-based and airborne remote sensing technologies.*” Remotely-sensed data collection currently consists of annual digital image collection of the entire Colorado River ecosystem around Memorial Day. The GCMRC intends to continue the annual acquisition of image data until resource programs determine that less frequent data can satisfy their monitoring requirements.

Accomplishments for remote sensing initiative in FY2001 include evaluations of various remote-sensing technologies that were deemed potential candidates for satisfying monitoring requirements of various GCMRC program elements. The program elements that were assessed included (1) mapping riparian vegetation, (2) mapping warm-water fish habitats, (3) detecting and monitoring cultural resources, and (4) monitoring terrestrial sand bar deposits.

Mapping Riparian Vegetation: We examined various airborne remote-sensing data that were collected during different seasons within a one-year time frame, with different spatial resolutions (11 cm to 100 cm), and with various technologies (CIR film, CIR CCDs, and multispectral data) to determine the relative merits of each data set for mapping riparian vegetation within the Grand Canyon. This study determined that digital, 3-4 band image data using appropriate wavelength bands can provide maps of riparian vegetation communities at a 60-70% accuracy level without field surveys. Field verification and limited surveys can increase this accuracy to about 80% or greater.

Mapping Warm-Water Fish Habitats and Cultural Features: We evaluated airborne thermal-infrared (TIR) data that were acquired at 100-cm resolution during maximum solar heating (at 1:30 p.m.) to determine the capability of such data for mapping warm backwaters and near-shore habitats for fish, in addition to mapping archaeological structural sites and natural springs within the Grand Canyon. Airborne TIR data can provide an instantaneous map of surface water temperature for very large regions, which cannot be obtained by in-situ measurement methods. Detection of archaeological structures requires the use of an airborne TIR sensor that can detect temperature differences as small as 0.1 degrees C, and provide at a spatial resolution of no more than 25 cm. Detection would be optimized by data collection after sunset or just after sunrise. Safety issues after dark and shadows during early morning make such data collections very difficult. Detection of natural springs is better approached using TIR data collected after sunset. TIR data collected during daylight hours detect only the largest springs, whose existence is already known. Detection of natural springs after sunset can and has been accomplished using rather low-resolution imagery (1-3 meters) because the spring waters spread from their source and present a large area and the spring water is much colder than the surrounding warm, dry ground.

Monitoring Sand-Bar Deposits: We evaluated light detection and ranging (LIDAR) and photogrammetric methods for remotely mapping sand bar deposits along the Colorado River to determine if these two remote-sensing technologies for mapping topography could approach the accuracies currently obtained using field survey methods and at a comparable cost, while providing more aerial coverage. Thus far, our studies have determined that LIDAR appears to be a suitable method for rapidly obtaining the topography of bare sediment surfaces over very large regions whereas photogrammetry produces more accurate ground topography in vegetated terrain than LIDAR.

We are further investigating LIDAR and photogrammetry in terms of their ability to map volumes of terrestrial sediments, which does not require knowledge of absolute elevations. In FY2002, we are investigating remote-sensing technologies to determine vegetation habitat structures (area, volumes, heights), to map and monitor older river terraces, to map and monitor channel bottom deposits, and to monitor the river water's suspended load and turbidity.

The remote sensing initiative will be completed in FY2002. A report will be completed in FY2002 that presents recommended technologies for implementation within all GCMRC program areas. Remote sensing activities in FY2004 will largely consist of data collection in support of the biological, cultural, and physical science programs at GCMRC.

MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES AND INFORMATION NEEDS

Introduction

Management objectives (MOs) and information needs (INs) help to define measurable standards of desired future resource conditions to be achieved by the AMP. The MOs and INs also drive the strategic planning process and they provide the basis for the annual monitoring and research program described in this plan.

Historical Development Of The Management Objectives And Information Needs

Using the nine resource areas in the EIS, meetings and workshops were held in 1996 to formulate management objectives and to define information needs associated with the various management objectives. These were intended to guide the development of GCMRC monitoring and research activities. In 1997 and 1998, additional discussions were held to revise Management Objectives and prioritize Information Needs. In FY 2001, the AMWG adopted a new set of MOs that resulted from its effort to develop an AMP strategic plan. The full AMP strategic plan will be completed in FY 2002.

Revision Process

As part of the AMP strategic planning process, the INs are being revised through a collaborative process led by the Grand Canyon Monitoring and Research Center. This process was initiated in Spring 2001 with a series of workshops and meetings with TWG representatives to discuss and refine the INs. A final meeting was held in October 2001 and the final draft of the Information Needs will be discussed at the November TWG meeting and forwarded to AMWG for their approval in January 2002. This plan references the current MOs, as the INs are currently under revision and have not been finalized. The MOs are listed in Appendix One.

The monitoring and research activities proposed in the FY 2004 Work Plan are intended to address the current management objectives and provide information to address INs that will be finalized in the future for monitoring and research activities for the Colorado River ecosystem. The specific MOs addressed by the monitoring and research activities proposed in this plan are listed in Appendix Two and referenced in the project descriptions.

PROTOCOL EVALUATION PROGRAM

The Protocol Evaluation Program (PEP) was initiated to provide independent external review of all GCMRC monitoring and research programs and provide recommendations to GCMRC regarding the specific monitoring protocols that will be used. The PEP process for evaluating current and new alternative protocols in all program resources area was completed by the end of FY 2002. An additional PEP was conducted during winter 2002, for assessment of survey support services to GCMRC. The recommendations resulting from these workshops have been distributed to the TWG and AMWG and are being used to modify the FY 2004 work plans as appropriate. All PEP workshops and evaluations are conducted in cooperation with external experts identified through a competitive, nationwide selection process, as well as in collaboration with GCMRC science cooperators, contractors, and Technical Work Group members.

CONTINGENCY PLANNING

The GCDAMP have adopted hydrologic criteria and resource criteria for triggering releases above peak power plant discharge from Glen Canyon Dam. When triggered, these criteria provide little lead time for monitoring and research planning. In addition, hydrologic conditions can lead to unplanned release events which may also require GCMRC to implement monitoring and research activities with little to no lead time. The potential for these events to occur results in the need for contingency planning. Annually, GCMRC develops contingency plans for implementation of:

1. Effects monitoring before and (or) after unplanned events, as appropriate;
2. research assessments of above peak power plant discharges from GCD (as per the GCDEIS) or other short-duration high flow unplanned events; and
3. an effects monitoring and research program for planned events between January-July of a given year.

An experimental flows fund to support additional monitoring and research activities resulting from implementing test flows in response to these triggering criteria has been established. In FY 2002, the amount of funds in this account was not sufficient to support a test. It is unclear what the state of the fund will be in FY 2004.

SCIENCE SYMPOSIUM

The GCMRC has initiated a program of regular scientific symposia to discuss the current state of scientific knowledge regarding the Colorado River ecosystem, as well as to learn about similar research in other systems. The GCMRC convenes a biennial Colorado River ecosystem science symposium, and between these years GCMRC program managers and participating scientists make presentations at the biennial Colorado Plateau symposium hosted by the Colorado Plateau Field Station of the Biological Resources Division of the USGS. GCMRC hosted a scientific symposium in Spring 2001 that focused on the results of the Low-Steady Summer Flows from Summer 2000. A third science symposium is scheduled for spring 2003. GCMRC will host its fourth science symposium in spring 2005, to present the current status of knowledge on the CRE following Phase I of its long-term monitoring program.

FUTURE CHALLENGES

GCMRC and the adaptive management program, in general, face a number of challenges with respect to designing monitoring and research activities to gather information on specific experimental management actions. These include potentially both the construction and operation of a temperature control device (TCD) on Glen Canyon Dam and the implementation of experimental endangered fish flows to satisfy the 1995 biological opinion on the operation of Glen Canyon Dam.

The FY 2004 Work Plan is based on the assumption that the TCD, if built, will not be operational until FY 2004 and that any activities required to supplement the planned monitoring and research activities will be supported out of the Bureau of Reclamation's Section 8 funds. With respect to implementation of endangered fish flows, the FY 2004 Work Plan is based on the assumption that, if implemented, the actual flows to be implemented will follow those in the plan prepared for GCMRC by SWCA, Inc. We also assume that a decision for implementation of endangered fish flows in FY 2004 will not be made until January 2004, and given the short lead time, any supplemental activities will be implemented as modifications to contracts already in place. As with the issue of contingency planning discussed earlier, a mechanism for funding this additional work needs to be developed.

SCHEDULE AND BUDGET

The Annual Work Plan and budget described in this document were reviewed by the TWG, which recommended at the May 16-17, 2002 meeting that the plan be recommended to the Secretary of the Interior by the AMWG. The total budget for the AMP for FY 2004 is \$11,014,000, of which \$8,105,000 supports the science activities of GCMRC, \$1,434,000 funds the the Programmatic Agreement, tribal consultation requirements and the administrative activities of Reclamation, and \$1,500,000 supports the experimental flow fund.

Of the \$8,105,000 GCMRC funds, \$7,111,000 would be provided from power revenues, \$309,000 from Reclamation Operation and Maintenance funds to support the Integrated Water Quality Program, and \$685,000 requested from Federal appropriations.

Of the \$1,434,000 funding the Programmatic Agreement, tribal participation and consultation, and Reclamation administration, \$959,000 would come from power revenues and \$475,000 would be requested from Federal appropriations.

Of the \$1,500,000 budgeted for experimental flows, \$500,000 would come from power revenues and \$1,000,000 would be requested from Federal appropriations.

Budget Review

If the requested Federal appropriations do not occur, AMP activities would be prioritized and the work plans revised to remain within available funds. Should the appropriated funds requested to support the GCMRC FY 2004 Work Plan not be fully funded, GCMRC will first work with the USGS to try and secure the required funds using all available budget mechanisms. Second, GCMRC will review the FY 2004 budget and identify specific work activities that could be deferred. The list of activities that could be potentially deferred will be discussed with the TWG and the AMWG. A recommendation supporting GCMRC's proposed prioritization and deferral of specific work activities in FY 2004 will be sought from the AMWG.

CHAPTER 2

SCIENTIFIC ACTIVITIES

INTRODUCTION

This chapter provides descriptions of individual monitoring and research projects to be initiated or continued as part of the GCMRC's FY 2004 integrated science program. These scientific activities are grouped into the following categories: (A) Terrestrial Ecosystem; (B) Aquatic Ecosystem; (C) Integrated Terrestrial and Aquatic Ecosystem; and (D) Remote Sensing. The individual projects are designed to provide information that may be useful in setting targets for Management Objectives. The AMWG mission and vision, and goals and management objectives are found in Appendix One. Individual projects and their relationship to the management objectives listed in Appendix Two. Reference to Information Needs (INs) will be added once the INs are finalized. In addition, a master project schedule is included as Table 2.1 to provide an overview of all project activities.

Because the Information Needs are currently being revised, the priorities may change when this work plan is implemented. In addition, resource ad-hoc groups may meet and suggest work plan modifications prior to plan implementation. Each of these projects are classified as: (1) Ongoing - meaning a continuation of efforts initiated during FY 2002 or earlier, or (2) New - meaning that the project represents initiation of long-term monitoring using current or new alternative methods and sampling design or a new research effort.

Additional information in Table 2.2 details funding sources and Table 2.3 shows how total project costs and staff participation are estimated to be distributed across the GCMRC program. A key element in developing an ecosystem science design for long-term monitoring and research is the team approach to project design and oversight being advanced by GCMRC in the FY 2004 Work Plan.

TABLE 2.1. Master Project Schedule

	FY 2001	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
A. TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEMS ACTIVITIES					
<u>ONGOING PROJECTS</u>					
1. Terrestrial Ecosystem Monitoring	Initiated	Ongoing	final year	New RFP	
1. - Cultural Monitoring Component	Initiated	Ongoing	ongoing	final year/ reassessment	
2. Kanab Ambersnail Monitoring	Ongoing	Ongoing	ongoing		
3. New Research in Terrestrial Ecosystems	end of project	New Project TBD	ongoing	ongoing	
4. Mapping Holocene Terraces			Initiated	final year	
5. Cultural Data Base Plan				Initiated	
6. Kanab Ambersnail Taxonomy			Initiated		
B. AQUATIC ECOSYSTEMS ACTIVITIES					
<u>ONGOING PROJECTS</u>					
1.& 2. Monitoring Aquatic Foodbase	End of Project	New RFP/design	ongoing	ongoing	
3. Monitoring Downstream Fish	Monitoring review/development	Ongoing	final year	New RFP	
4. Monitoring Lees Ferry Trout Fishery	Initiated	Ongoing	ongoing	ongoing	
5. IWQP Downstream Activities	final year for interim plan	review/implementation	ongoing	ongoing	
6. IWQP Lake Powell O&M Funded	final year for interim plan	review/implementation	ongoing	ongoing	
<u>NEW PROJECTS</u>					
7. Native and Non-Native Fish Species	funds used for review/monitoring development				
8. Captive Breeding Program		New Project	ongoing	ongoing	
C. INTEGRATED TERRES & AQUATIC ECO					
<u>ONGOING PROJECTS</u>					
1. Monitoring Fine-Grain Sediment Storage	Initiated	Ongoing	ongoing	ongoing	final year
1. - Recreational Component - Beaches	Ongoing	Ongoing	ongoing	ongoing	final year
2. Monitoring Streamflow Fine-Sediment Transport	Initiated	Ongoing	ongoing	ongoing	final year
3. Monitoring Coarse-Grained Sediment	Initiated	Ongoing	ongoing	ongoing	final year

	FY 2001	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005
4. A/B. Sediment-Transport Modeling	Start delayed until 2002	Initiated	ongoing	final year	
5. Control Network	Ongoing	Ongoing	ongoing	ongoing	completed
6. Hydrographic Mapping	Initiated	Ongoing	ongoing	ongoing	ongoing
<u>NEW PROJECTS</u>					
7. Oral Traditions			RFP	New project	Final year
D. OTHER SCIENCE ACTIVITIES					
<u>ONGOING PROJECTS</u>					
1. Unsolicited Proposals		New projects	New project		
1. - Adopt-a-Beach	Ongoing	Ongoing	ongoing	ongoing	ongoing
2. AMWG/TWG Requests			ongoing		
3. In-House Research			New project		
4. Tribal Outreach Activities			New project	ongoing	
5. Public Outreach/Involvement Plan Imple.			New project	ongoing	
6. Cultural Resource Synthesis & Status Report			New project	ongoing	ongoing
<u>NEW PROJECTS</u>					
7. Cultural Affiliation Study				Initiated	
8. Experimental Flows		Initial year (treatment 1)	ongoing	ongoing	ongoing

TABLE 2.2. FY-2004 Funding Sources

SUMMARY BY PROJECT	AMP Power Revenues	Other Funding	Appropriations Request
I. PROGRAM ADMINISTRATION			
<u>A. ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT WORK GROUP</u>			
1. Personnel Costs	178,000		
2. AMWG Member Travel Reimbursement	13,000		
3. Reclamation Travel	18,000		
4. Facilitation Contract	25,000		
5. Other	9,000		
<u>B. TECHNICAL WORK GROUP</u>			
1. Personnel Costs	81,000		
2. TWG Member Travel Reimbursement	15,000		
3. Reclamation Travel	17,000		
4. TWG Chair Reimbursement	25,000		
5. Other	2,000		
<u>C. COMPLIANCE DOCUMENTS</u>	26,000		
<u>D. CONTRACT ADMINISTRATION</u>	25,000		
II. TRIBAL CONSULTATION			
<u>A. COOPERATIVE AGREEMENTS WITH TRIBES</u>			
1. Hopi Tribe			80,000
2. Hualapai Tribe			80,000
3. Navajo Nation			80,000
4. Pueblo of Zuni			80,000
5. Southern Paiute			80,000
<u>B. RIVER TRIP LOGISTICS COSTS TO GCMRC</u>			
1. Hopi Tribe			15,000
2. Hualapai Tribe			15,000
3. Navajo Nation			15,000
4. Pueblo of Zuni			15,000
5. Southern Paiute			15,000
III. PROGRAMMATIC AGMT. FOR CULTURAL RESOURCES			
<u>A. WORK PLAN ACTIVITIES</u>			
1. Completion of HPP	50,000		
2. Reclamation Administration	50,000		
3. Treatment & Monitoring Preparation Plan & Implementation	400,000		
IV. EXPERIMENTAL FLOW FUND	500,000		1,000,000
SUBTOTAL	1,434,000		1,475,000
I. SCIENCE PROJECTS			
<u>A. TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEM ACTIVITIES</u>			
1. Terrestrial Ecosystem Monitoring	624,490		
2. Kanab Ambersnail Monitoring	86,100		
3. New Research in Terrestrial Ecosystems	69,250		
4. Mapping Holocene Deposits	112,850		
5. Cultural Data Base Plan	24,850		
6. Kanab Ambersnail Taxonomy	25,850		100,000
<u>B. AQUATIC ECOSYSTEM ACTIVITIES</u>			
1. Aquatic Foodbase - External	179,600		
2. Aquatic Foodbase - In House	91,250		
3. Status and Trends of Downstream Fish	856,210		
4. Status and Trends of the Lee's Ferry Trout Fishery	161,660		
5. Integrated Water Quality Monitoring - Downstream	199,900		
6. Integrated Water Quality Monitoring - Lake Powell		309,000	
7. Native & Non-Native Fish Species	77,200		
8. Captive Breeding Program	50,000		100,000

C. INTEGRATED ECOSYSTEM ACTIVITIES			
1. Fine-Grained Sediment Storage	461,730		15,000
2. Streamflow and Fine-Sediment Transport	609,420		95,000
3. Coarse-Grained Sediment Inputs	145,275		
4. Sediment Transport Modeling	256,375		
5. Control Network	86,640		
6. Channel Mapping	125,900		
7. LCR Integrated Studies			200,000
D. OTHER SCIENCE ACTIVITIES			
1. Unsolicited Proposals	78,880		
Adopt-a-Beach	10,000		
2. AMWG/TWG Requests	64,155		
3. In-House Research	22,000		
4. Tribal Outreach	34,850		
5. Public Outreach Involvement Plan Implementation	14,850		
6. Cultural Resource Synthesis & Status Report	10,850		
7. Oral Traditions	54,850		
II. ADMINISTRATIVE & TECHNICAL SUPPORT SERVICES			
E. ADMINISTRATIVE & MANAGEMENT			
1. Administrative Operations	818,600		
2. Program Planning & Management	302,870		
3. AMWG/TWG Participation	55,390		
4. Independent Reviews	170,465		
F. TECHNICAL SUPPORT SERVICES			
1. Geographic Information Systems	146,500		
2. Data Base Management	100,300		
3. Library Operations	75,800		25,000
4. Survey Operations	130,260		
5. Decision Support System			150,000
6. Systems Administration	261,450		
7. Aerial Photography (previously in Remote Sensing)	514,380		
8. Logistics (Distributed to Projects)			
SUBTOTAL	8,545,000	309,000	2,160,000
TOTAL OF ALL SOURCES			11,014,000

TABLE 2.3. Summary Table of Projected FY 2004 Budget for GCMRC

ID	Project Descriptions	Salary	Operating Expenses	Biology Program Costs	Cultural Program Costs	Physical Program Costs	IT Program Costs	Logistics Support	Survey Support	GIS Support	TOTAL PROJECT COST
SCIENTIFIC ACTIVITIES											
A	Terrestrial Ecosystem Activities										
1	Terrestrial Ecosystem Monitoring	51,740		211,000	129,000			229,000		3,750	624,000
2	Kanab Ambersnail Monitoring	13,500		31,000				37,000	4,600		86,000
3	New Research in Terrestrial Ecosystems	19,250		50,000							69,000
4	Mapping Holocene Deposits	4,850			100,000			8,000			113,000
5	Cultural Data Base Plan	4,850			20,000						25,000
6	Kanab Ambersnail Taxonomy	3,850		122,000							126,000
B	Aquatic Ecosystem Activities										0
1	Aquatic Foodbase - External	42,600		129,000				8,000			180,000
2	Aquatic Foodbase - In House	19,250		65,000				7,000			91,000
3	Status & Trends of Downstream Fish	84,210		603,000				169,000			856,000
4	Status & Trends of Lee's Ferry Trout	16,660		123,000				22,000			162,000
5	IWQP - Downstream	115,900		48,000				36,000			200,000
6	IWQP - Lake Powell	148,500	157,900							2,600	309,000
7	Native & Non-Native Species	42,200		35,000							77,000
8	Captive Breeding Program			150,000							150,000
C	Integrated Activities										0
1	Fine-Grained Sediment Storage	23,080		33,000	77,000	274,000		57,000	8,900	3,750	477,000
2	Streamflow & Fine-Sediment Transport	51,420		76,000		528,000		49,000			704,000
3	Coarse-Grained Sediment Inputs	10,950				81,000		47,000	4,450	1,875	145,000
4	Sediment Transport Modeling	15,600			18,000	200,000		12,000	8,900	1,875	256,000
5	Control Network							54,000	32,640		87,000
6	Channel Mapping							90,000	35,900		126,000
7	LCR Integrated Studies		200,000								200,000
D	Other Science Activities										0
1	Unsolicited Proposals	3,880		35,000		40,000					79,000
	Adopt-a-Beach				10,000						10,000
2	AMWG/TWG Requests	14,155	50,000								64,000
3	In-House Research	0	22,000		0						22,000
4	Tribal Outreach	4,850			30,000						35,000
5	Public Outreach Involvement Plan Imple.	4,850			10,000						15,000
6	Cultural Synthesis & Data Report	4,850			6,000						11,000
7	Oral Traditions	4,850			50,000						55,000
	Subtotal:	705,845	1,429,900	1,711,000	450,000	1,123,000	0	825,000	95,390	13,850	6,354,000

TABLE 2.3. SUMMARY TABLE OF PROJECTED FY 2004 BUDGET (Cont'd)

ID	Project Descriptions	Salary	Operating Expenses	Biology Program Costs	Cultural Program Costs	Physical Program Costs	IT Program Costs	Logistics Support	Survey Support	GIS Support	TOTAL PROJECT COST
ADMINISTRATIVE & TECHNICAL SUPPORT SERVICES											
E	Administrative & Management										0
1	Administrative Operations	244,600	574,000								820,000
2	Program Planning & Management	282,870	20,000								303,000
3	AMWG/TWG	43,390	12,000								55,000
4	Independent Reviews	20,465	150,000								170,000
F	Technical Support Services										0
1	Geographic Information System	90,500					56,000				147,000
2	Data Base Management System	53,300					47,000				100,000
3	Library	36,800					64,000				101,000
4	Survey Operations	43,260					87,000				130,000
5	Decision Support System						150,000				150,000
6	Systems Administration	84,450					177,000				261,000
7	Aerial Photography	19,580					450,000		8,900	35,900	514,000
8	Logistics (distributed to projects)										0
	TOTAL	1,625,060	1,185,900	1,711,000	450,000	1,123,000	1,031,000	825,000	104,290	49,750	8,105,000

A. TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEM ACTIVITIES

ONGOING PROJECTS:

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: A.1. TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEM MONITORING

Rationale/Problem Statement: The terrestrial ecosystem within the Colorado River Ecosystem (CRE) is comprised of habitat that varies from open beaches to debris fans to alluvial deposits like high terraces and talus slopes. Overlaid on these areas are plant communities that fall out along a moisture gradient (e.g., cattails by the river and cacti and mesquite farther away from the river). Along the river corridor, these plant communities can be delineated into pre-dam, or old high water zone vegetation and post-dam or new high water zone vegetation, including a marsh community (USBOR, 1995). These plant communities or the space absent of vegetation influence or define the concomitant animal and insect community. Vegetation provides either shelter or structure for nesting or foraging (either by direct consumption or indirectly by being the host for insects that are the food source). Likewise, space absent of vegetation also represents habitats. The presence or absence, distribution or abundance of plant species effects the distribution and abundance of animals, including humans, and collectively these species (plants and animals) reflect the quality of terrestrial habitats along the Colorado River ecosystem (see Diagram 1).

Plant communities and the space occupied or utilized by their associated animal and insect species constitute resources that provide recreational and intrinsic benefit, are of cultural value to tribes (e.g., some plants, yellow birds, or eagles) or other entities, or are indicators of change and health of the system (invasive exotic plant or high abundances of particular animal species like harvester ants or mice). The abundance and distribution of these resources are influenced by available habitat and inter-specific interactions. Elements addressed in this monitoring program are habitat structure and composition and distribution of plants as they relate primarily to bird abundance and distribution and to the river corridor itself within the zone affected by dam operations.

Other aspects addressed include linkages to distribution, abundance and composition of birds, insects, and vegetation.

Monitoring the composition and structure of vegetation, and the abundance and distribution of plants, insects, and animals within the terrestrial zones (NHWZ and OHWZ): (1) allows managers to assess the status of terrestrial vegetation and faunal diversity in association with biological, cultural and recreational resources; (2) provides data that allows identification and interpretation of linkages between physical and biological variables within the Colorado River ecosystem; and (3) provides data on the effect of periodic management of sediment through high flows under the Record of Decision on higher trophic levels associated with terrestrial habitats.

Flow (water availability/releases) & Sediment/substrate

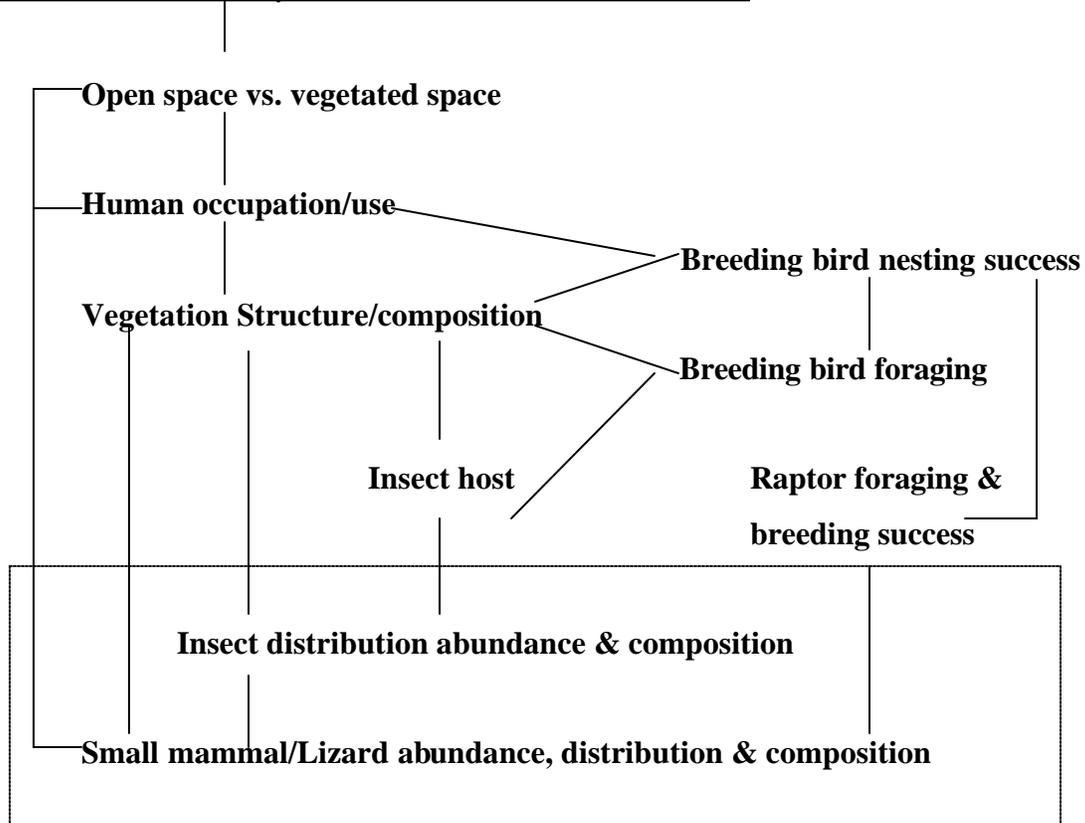


Diagram 1. A flow diagram that illustrate linkages between releases, space, vegetation, insects, birds and their intermediate links, which are represented by those organisms circumscribed by the dotted line. Arrows that are two-sided reflect the reciprocal effects or feedback loop associated with those resources (e.g., human use can create disturbance that promotes weedy plant species and change foodbase composition (decline in some insects but an increase in seed production and an increase in small mammal populations) that can feedback to human occupation/use).

Integration: The primary goal of this project is to document significant changes in the abundance and distribution of terrestrial vegetation and secondarily the animals, including waterfowl, nesting avifauna, raptors, and other culturally important birds and coordinate these with information on the vegetation and insect communities. Other animals that are sampled are identified as links to these resources and will aid in discriminating between natural variation and the effects of operations on these resources. Other parameters that are collected under separately funded projects and that can be incorporated into analysis and interpretation of terrestrial ecosystem monitoring include discharge, camping beach area and fine sediment monitoring.

Protocol Evaluation Panel: The terrestrial biology PEP (Urquhart et al., 2000), recommended that terrestrial resources, i.e., flora, fauna and physical habitat) be sampled in an integrated fashion. This recommendation was echoed by the physical and cultural PEPs, as well as the NRC (1999). In addition, the terrestrial biology PEP recommended that vegetation sampling sites be expanded and that additional elements (i.e., insects, lizards, small mammals) be sampled at the same time. The recommendation for expanding vegetation sampling comes from the viewpoint that the 11 sites historically monitored do not adequately reflect change along the channel margin, a similar recommendation associated with sediment came from the physical review panel. The inclusion of other elements to be sampled, like insects and small mammals, was recommended because single species monitoring (e.g., on SWWF, or species of concern) may fail to determine the variable that is affecting a change in a resource. For example, it may be that ROD flows reduce shoreline insects by destabilizing their habitat. These species may be a food source for riparian birds as well as native fish. By counting only birds or fish and seeing a decline or an increase in these species one cannot attribute that change to either natural variation or to dam operations. Additionally, these other links can also serve as a metric for the level of impact a camping site may experience: increased abundances of mice or harvester ants (pogo ant) at a site may be an indication of a degraded, highly disturbed camp which feeds into recreational interests and human health issues. Multi-species monitoring is also supported by the conceptual model for the CRE (Walters and Korman, 2000). The model is based on trophic cascades and linkages

and recognizes that linkages are not unidirectional, but have interactions within trophic levels and between trophic levels.

General Project Description: The goal of this project is the collection of data necessary to monitor the effects of Glen Canyon Dam operations on terrestrial biological resources of concern. Analysis includes: (1) the composition, distribution and structure of vegetative communities and plant species; and (2) the abundance and distribution of faunal constituents linked to these vegetative communities, (3) the relative abundance and distribution of waterfowl, raptors and riparian breeding birds (including southwestern willow flycatcher). The project is multidisciplinary and will seek to include Native American perspectives in ecosystem monitoring and interpretation.

Project Goals and Objectives: To annually measure, evaluate and report structural and compositional changes in terrestrial vegetation zones (old and new high water zones) that support avifaunal and traditional cultural resources. These vegetation data will be related to changes in cultural, recreational and biological resources relative to annual operations of Glen Canyon Dam and fine-sediment monitoring data. Objectives of the project include:

- Understand how yearly operational patterns affect vegetation composition and structure in bird survey patch sites.
- Understand how composition and structure of patches influences bird abundance and distribution.
- Understand how vegetation composition affects invertebrate abundance and composition as a food base for avifauna and other vertebrates.
- Understand how vegetation composition and density changes relative to stage/discharge relationship and to geomorphic reach system-wide.
- Included in this work is an effort to merge tribal perspectives into the status of resources in the CRE.

MOs Addressed: This project is associated with management objectives listed under goal 6, specifically 6.1, 6.2., 6.3., 6.4., 6.5., 6.7.

Expected Products: Annual delivery of data on changes in species abundance and distribution that result from interactions between available habitat and dam operations. Report delivery about the status of species abundance, distribution and compositional

change. Data delivery and exchange for integration with campsite monitoring regarding change of useable avifaunal habitat and campable beach habitat. FY 2004 products will include:

- Annual and final report
- Fact sheet
- Annual data delivery
- Coordination meetings with participating tribes and Park

Recommended Approach/Methods:

Sampling: The Biological PEP recommended expanding terrestrial flora and fauna surveys and to initiate monitoring utilizing randomly selected sampling sites based on a complete georeferenced map of the river corridor, requiring a two to three year effort (Urquhart et al., 2000). We have proposed a mapping project that will result in a georeferenced map of the river corridor at the same time that we take a phased approach to the expanded and integrated monitoring recommended by the PEP. Although we discuss at some length herein the integration of terrestrial vegetation analyses and mapping with faunal surveys, the principal objective of this project remains collecting vegetation data to allow detection of change over time and to delineate the species composition of the vegetation.

Sample sites: A georeferenced map provides the ability to randomly select sampling sites and to determine variables that predict “good,” “marginal” and “poor” habitat. Such a map would also allow the development of predictive responses and as a means of validating the conceptual model of how the CRE functions. Sampling for abundance and distribution of organisms will be coordinated so the data that is collected is representative of the overall river corridor and not of particular sites. This program will utilize randomly selected sampling sites, although some sites will be fixed by their nature (e.g., TCP). The initial sampling sites will be selected from historic bird survey sites (110 total sites are available). Each year 64 sites will be visited. The sites visited in FY 2004 will overlap with but not be the same sites visited in FY 2001 or FY 2002. Vegetation structure measurements will be linked to bird sites, therefore the sites visited for vegetation structure and composition in FY 2004 will similarly overlap with but not

be the same as those sampled in FY 2001 or FY 2002. The sites sampled for vegetation structure will also represent an increase of at least 53 sampling areas beyond the existing 11 vegetation mapping/monitoring sites (Kearsley and Ayers, 1999). Sites where linkage data are collected will be fewer in number (16 sites) due to logistics, and will exhibit a similar year-to-year rotational approach as described above.

The sites to be sampled will be identified in a manner that can be incorporated into a georeferenced relational mapping effort. These sample sites will have GPS coordinates established when possible (depending on satellite availability within the canyon) so they can be added to the GIS system and linked to a river corridor map when it is available. By gathering these data (bird, vegetation, foodbase links) collectively and examining trends of bird abundance and composition through time, for example, and within a GIS environment, we begin to fit together pieces that identify preferred habitat and better understand the implications (i.e., risk assessment) of management actions.

Sampling: Faunal monitoring data will be collected using primarily field-based survey measurements that include point-counts, walking surveys and live trapping for small mammals (Spence et al., 1998, Sogge et al., 1998, sample book). Surveys will consist of 5 12-18 day trips between the months of January through June and a fall trip in September. Survey sites, which include point-count stations, will occur in designated patches along the river within geomorphic reaches. A minimum of 57 patches will be visited each year below Lees Ferry, with 7 patches being visited above Lees Ferry. This number of samples is sufficient to characterize abundance and distribution of 15 most common bird, including Lucy's warbler (sensitive species elsewhere), blue grosbeaks, and yellow breasted chats (Spence et al., 1998). Other species will also be counted; however, to expect to monitor birds that occur rarely or are sporadically distributed (i.e., site specific) in addition to corridor-wide surveys is unrealistic given the funding available. The exception to this case is the southwestern willow flycatcher--which is a listed species. In this case we will conduct more intensive surveys to determine presence or absence, estimate habitat use, and assess breeding success of any observed breeding pairs. The birds listed above plus others may be considered surrogates or metrics of breeding bird habitat given that they occur in large enough numbers to detect changes in abundance.

Vegetation will be measured in a manner that captures composition and structure of habitats sampled for birds (Mills et al., 1991). Data regarding annual changes in plant species abundance and distribution will be collected at sites that may be randomized or at designated monitoring sites depending on the resource in question (e.g., a TCP or an exotic perennial that is locally abundant or fixed vs. *carex* sp. or dogbane that are widespread in their distribution) and may include pre-dam river terraces where appropriate. Methods may include line transects along elevational gradients to the river, or relieve patches that visually estimate % cover and species list for samples. Available habitat associated with vegetation change and campsite areas will be extracted from campsite monitoring data. Structural and compositional habitat data collection will be scheduled to coincide with nesting avifaunal monitoring (April, May). Data collection associated with linkages will be conducted seasonally (e.g., January, April/May, September) and in concert with avifaunal monitoring. Under contingency plans, additional measurements of vegetated habitat will occur in the event of large-scale flow experiments (e.g., BHBF and SASF).

The foregoing sampling strategies result in the following sampling framework:

- Bird habitat patch (minimum 100 m). 50-60 patches in spring. Vegetation structure and composition is recorded for each patch measured.
- Bird/lizard walking transect within vegetation patches 50-60 patches/3 times/year. Birds encountered or heard are recorded. 15 to 20 most common birds are tracked. SWWF is also monitored.
- Overwintering and waterfowl survey in February.
- Small mammal, invertebrate sampling at camping sites 4 times per year to determine relative densities and seasonal changes of foodbase.
- Vegetation density transects for reach-based estimates of vegetation cover and system-wide change. Transects at 60k, 45k, 35k, 25k and 15k cfs stages. 60 sites per year.

Lower Grand Canyon: GCMRC will continue efforts to determine appropriate means of obtaining data from agencies and other parties involved in monitoring terrestrial resources in the lower Grand Canyon. Possibilities for joint sampling efforts and coordination will be explored. GCMRC needs to develop or access data in this area, particularly related to southwestern willow flycatcher in order to provide a complete picture of status and trends for the AMP.

Tribal Participation: Tribal perspectives for terrestrial resources that are significant to the tribes will be included in this monitoring effort. This may be represented by transferring the information to the tribe for interpretation and subsequent reporting, augmenting monitoring methods with tribal monitoring methods and monitors, or by other means. These efforts are funded at levels in addition to those already designated for this program and administered under a separate contract or agreement. This component of the project is discussed in detail in the following section.

Status: Ongoing. Originally Approved and Implemented in FY 2001.

External Project Awards: Mike Kearsley, Northern Arizona University and Helen Yard, Helen Yard Consulting. Three year duration.

Project Accomplishments: FY 2001 was the initiation of this project. As of this writing, the project had completed its first year of field work and was part way through the field schedule for FY 2002.

Schedule: This long-term monitoring was initiated in FY 2001 and will continue annually through at least FY 2004.

Oct-December	January-March	April-June	July-September
Analysis & report writing.	Review of project & RFP development, Field survey	Field surveys (3)	Release RFP, Analysis, Field survey.

Budget: \$624,490

TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEM MONITORING					
Description		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)					
Biology Program Manager	0.05	6,090	4,450	5,150	5,800
Biologist - Terrestrial	0.50	9,150	12,000	14,600	38,500
Biology Student	0.10	0	0	1,800	1,700
Cultural Program Manager	0.04	8,700	8,900	4,500	3,880
Physical Program Manager	0.02	1,740	1,780	1,700	1,860
Database Manager			7,400	0	0
Contracts					
Biology		180,000	184,000	200,000	206,000
Cultural		75,000	77,000	125,000	129,000
Technical Support Services					
Logistics		32,000	88,200	208,000	229,000
GIS	0.05		3,000	4,000	3,750
Operating Expenses				5,000	5,000
TOTAL		312,680	386,730	569,750	624,490

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: A.1. TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEM MONITORING - Cultural Component - Tribal Participation

Rationale/Problem Statement: The terrestrial ecosystem within the Colorado River ecosystem is comprised of habitat that varies from open beaches, debris fans, alluvial deposits like high terraces and talus slopes. Overlaid on these areas are plant communities that fall out along a moisture gradient (e.g., cattails by the river and cacti and mesquite farther away from the river). Along the river corridor, these plant communities can be delineated into pre-dam, or old high water zone vegetation and post-dam or new high water zone vegetation, including a marsh community (USBOR, 1995). These plant communities or the space absent of vegetation influence or define the animal community. Vegetation provides either shelter or structure for nesting or foraging (either by direct consumption or indirectly by being the host for insects that are the food source). Likewise, space absent of vegetation also represents habitats. The presence or absence, distribution or abundance of plant species effects the distribution and abundance of

animals, including humans, and collectively these species (plants and animals) reflect the quality of terrestrial habitats along the Colorado River ecosystem.

While western scientists may describe the terrestrial system in a particular manner under certain parameters, tribal members may evaluate the resources differently. This project attempts to obtain and merge information from both sources to assess the resources more comprehensively.

Integration: The primary goal of the tribal component of this project is to document significant changes in the abundance and distribution of terrestrial animals including waterfowl, nesting avifauna, raptors, and other culturally important birds and coordinate these with information on the vegetation communities from western and tribal perspectives through the combined assessment of scientists and tribal representatives. See the biological project description for the integration of this project across physical, cultural and recreational resource areas.

General Project Description: The purpose of this project is the collection of data necessary to monitor the effects of Glen Canyon Dam operations on terrestrial biological resources of concern. Analysis includes: (1) the relative abundance and distribution of waterfowl, raptors and riparian breeding birds (including southwestern willow flycatcher); (2) the composition, distribution and structure of vegetative communities and plant species; and (3) the abundance and distribution of faunal constituents linked to these vegetative communities. The project is multidisciplinary and includes Native American perspectives in ecosystem monitoring and interpretation. See biological component for full project description.

Tribal Participation Component: Tribal perspectives for terrestrial resources that are significant to the tribes are included in this monitoring effort. Tasks to incorporate tribal perspectives include transferring information to the tribe for interpretation and subsequent reporting, augmenting monitoring methods with tribal monitoring methods and monitors, or by other means. These efforts are funded at levels in addition to those already designated for this program and administered under a separate contract or agreement. Tribal participation for FY 2004 is specified at \$ 129,000 to incorporate all

five AMP participating tribal groups. This project was initiated in FY 2001 with additional approved funding in FY 2002 and FY 2003.

Project Goals and Objectives: The goal of this project is to integrate western and tribal perspectives on the monitoring and assessment of terrestrial resources in the CRE. Specific objectives are to: 1) Provide tribal perspectives on biological resource data collection methods relative to western science and tribal methodologies; 2) Identify impacts to resources from tribal perspectives; and 3) Provide recommendations for future monitoring of biological resources, data comparability and integrative mechanisms.

MOs Addressed: This project addresses the cultural resource MO 11.2.

Expected Products: Project products include: 1) Participation in data discussion meetings, presentation of preliminary data and provide information on the assessment of the condition of resources; 2) Participation in late fall/early winter meeting to discuss tribal data, collection methods, and a tribal interpretation of the information; and 3) Provide a brief written report to include tribal perspectives on data methodologies, tribal methodologies, data results, and recommendations for future monitoring activities.

Recommended Approach/Methods: Tribal groups develop work statements to accomplish the overall goals of the biological monitoring project. Work methodologies may differ as appropriate to the tribal group and the needs of the project. To date, methods range from intense field monitoring to data development and off-site interpretation.

Status: This project is ongoing and was originally approved and implemented in FY 2001.

External Project Awards: Awards have been made under this project to the Hopi Tribe, the Hualapai Tribe, and the Southern Paiute Consortium in FY 2001 and 2002. Awards are anticipated to all five AMP participating tribes in FY 2004 based on their expressed interest.

Project Accomplishments: To date, tribal representatives have participated in field monitoring trips and participated in field methodologies and assessment. Two workshops/meetings have been held to discuss tribal data and perspectives with the biological scientists. The first annual summary report was submitted to the biological PI by the tribes.

Schedule: This project was initiated in FY 2001. The final year of this project is FY 2004 at which time the project will be reassess and a new RFP will be announced.

Winter	Spring	Summer	Fall	December
Agreements drafted - Oct. - Dec.	Data collection	Data Collection & analysis	Data analysis & reporting	Report delivery

Budget: For budget see Terrestrial Monitoring Project A-1 above.

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: A.2. MONITORING KANAB AMBERSNAIL AND HABITAT AT VASEY'S PARADISE

Rationale/Problem Statement: Kanab ambersnail is a federally listed endangered species occurring in one location in Grand Canyon: Vasey's Paradise. While the taxonomic ranking of this taxon is currently unresolved, it represents a taxon that is endemic to Vasey's Paradise. The snail and its habitat is a unique ecosystem determined to be of concern by stakeholders. The site is also a traditional cultural resource to all Native American stakeholders. The abundance and distribution of the snail and the quality of its habitat is influenced by operations of Glen Canyon Dam, as well as by springs located at Vasey's Paradise (Diagram 2). Monitoring of quality, area and distribution occurs on a more detailed scale due to the limited nature of the habitat and surveys for animals are limited to snails. These surveys occur more than once per year. The relationships between operations from Glen Canyon Dam, habitat quality and its use by Kanab ambersnail at Vasey's Paradise are a management concern. Monitoring data on these ecosystem elements provide information on the effectiveness of the primary

experimental flow treatment (Secretary's 1996 Record of Decision) relative to stated resource management objectives.

Monitoring of Kanab ambersnail densities, size classes and utilized habitat: (1) allows managers to assess the status of this endangered species; (2) provides data that allows identification and interpretation of linkages between physical and biological variables within the Colorado River ecosystem; (3) provides data on the effect of periodic management of sediment through high flows under the Record of Decision on the population dynamics and habitat interactions of this species.

Dam releases Stage/discharge relationship Spring discharge @ Vasey's Paradise

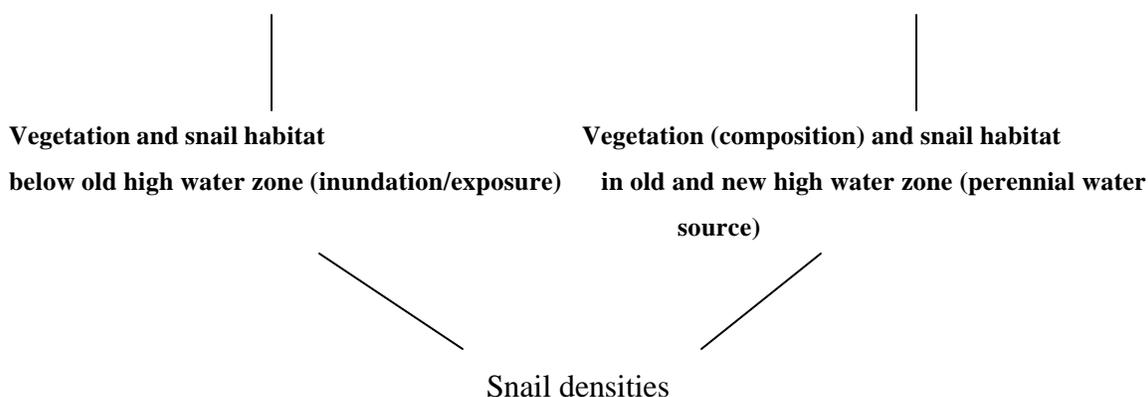


Diagram 2. Illustration of the interactions stage discharge, habitat and snail densities have at Vasey's Paradise. While the dam and the spring are responsible for habitat, stage discharge relationship has the effect of exposing or inundating habitat, while the springs affect moisture gradients at the spring and influence plant composition.

Integration: Vasey's Paradise is a site that has is a unique physical feature that has biological, cultural and recreational value. In addition, the location is a sensitive cultural resource to Native American stakeholders. The primary goal for this monitoring project is to document significant changes in snail densities and size classes and available habitat at Vasey's Paradise resulting from interactions of dam operations and these variables.

General Project Description: Data collection and analysis that permits the monitoring of the Kanab ambersnail habitat up to the old high water zone and provides population estimates of the snail within this area.

Project Goals and Objectives: To determine the abundance of Kanab ambersnails that inhabit the Vasey's Paradise Springs vegetation and to determine how snail densities change relative to time and to available habitat, as habitat is influenced by operations and discharge from the spring. Monitoring of Kanab ambersnail densities, size classes and utilized habitat: (1) allows managers to assess the status of this endangered species; (2) provides data that allows identification and interpretation of linkages between physical and biological variables within the Colorado River ecosystem; (3) provides data on the effect of periodic management of sediment through high flows under the Record of Decision on the population dynamics and habitat interactions of this species. These data will be related to available habitat changes relative to annual operations of Glen Canyon Dam and life history requirement of the species of concern. Specific objectives of the project include:

- Provide yearly estimates of adult snails at Vasey's Paradise.
- Provide habitat estimates and change detection of habitat for varying stage levels.
- Provide data to use in population model development for snails at Vasey's Paradise.

MOs Addressed: This project addresses MOs 5.1 and 5.2.

Expected Products:

- Yearly report of status and trend of Kanab ambersnail and habitat change.
- Trip reports following each trip providing area estimates of vegetation and general description of status of snail at V.P.
- Fact sheet

Recommended Approach/Methods: Kanab ambersnail monitoring data will be collected using primarily field-based survey methods for snail densities and available habitat. Habitat will be measured when possible using remotely sensed methods to minimize impact to the site. Available habitat values are used for biological opinion consultation associated with special high releases (e.g., BHBF). Estimates for snail densities in difficult to access areas of habitat will receive increased attention in an effort to more reliably extrapolate data from more accessible areas. Data regarding annual

changes in species abundance and distribution will be collected and may include pre-dam river vegetated habitat. Collection of available habitat and snail density will be conducted in the spring and fall to assess overwintering survival and subsequent recruitment. Issues pertaining to potential seasonal biases in population estimates will be addressed. These trips will be coordinated with population translocation site surveys located downstream. Specific methods and approaches include:

Population estimates:

- Sampling in the spring for over winter survival and in the fall for recruitment
- Sub-sampling vegetation patches for snails and developing estimates using boot strapping methods.

Habitat estimates:

- Traditional survey of perimeter of habitat and areas subsequently generated.
- Estimation of habitat available or affected by discharges > 30,000 cfs.
- Investigate feasibility of photogrammetry for habitat estimates.

Project consultation will be conducted with Native American stakeholders. Under contingency plans, additional measurements of habitat will occur in the event of large-scale flow experiments (e.g., BHBF and SASF).

Status: Ongoing.

External Project Awards: Cooperative agreement with Arizona Game and Fish Department and coordination with Kanab ambersnail working group.

Project Accomplishments: Yearly population estimates for the snail.

Schedule: This long-term monitoring was initiated in FY 2001 and will be continued annually through at least FY 2005 through contract and (or) cooperative agreements.

Oct-December	January-March	April-June	July-September
Data delivery, analysis.	Report delivery.	Data collection/survey	Data collection/survey

Budget: \$86,100

MONITORING KANAB AMBERSNAIL					
Description		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)					
Biology Program Manager	0.05	4,350	4,450	5,150	5,800
Biologist - Terrestrial	0.10	9,150	6,000	7,300	7,700
Biology Student		900	850	0	0
Cultural Program Manager			4,450	0	0
Contracts					
Biology		10,000	10,000	30,000	31,000
Technical Support Services					
Logistics			39,200	33,000	37,000
Survey - Surveyor		4,150	4,300		
Survey - Surveying Technician	0.10	11,400	11,400	5,900	4,600
GIS					
TOTAL		39,950	80,650	81,350	86,100

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: A.3. NEW RESEARCH IN TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEMS

Rational/Problem Statement: Research, in addition to monitoring, is an essential element of adaptive management because it illuminates potential mechanisms of patterns that become apparent under long-term trend analysis. In FY 2002 development of a population model for Kanab ambersnail was begun to address one of the emerging needs identified by the TWG.

Integration: As monitoring and inventory projects proceed, questions that forge linkages between cultural, biological and physical resources may become very obvious and may point to explicit research projects and questions.

General Project Description: Funds for trophic interactive work and biological PEP activities in the amount of \$93,000 will be available for new research in FY 2002. Selection of a specific project will be done in consultation with the TWG. Potential uses of these funds include:

- Population model for Kanab ambersnail that examines operational scenarios and predicts outcomes.
- Used to augment mapping project if appropriated funds are not fully provided.
- Funds to be utilized to support new project on the dynamics of Old High Water Zone Vegetation in FY2004.

Project Goals & Objectives: This cannot be determined at this time because the projects have not been fully specified.

MOs Addressed: Unknown

Schedule:

Oct-December	January-March	April-June	July-September
Release and award RFP	Collection permit process. Data accumulation/	Analysis or field work.	Field surveys

Budget: \$69,250

NEW RESEARCH IN TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEM	New in		
Description	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)			
Biologist - Terrestrial 0.25		7,300	19,250
Contracts			
Biology	93,000	0	50,000
TOTAL	93,000	7,300	69,250

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: A.4. MAPPING HOLOCENE TERRACES

Rational/Problem Statement: Mapping of the Colorado River corridor is required for spatial monitoring of physical, biological, and cultural resources. Attributes associated with a coverage type can also be used as a predictive tool for monitoring and research. This project addresses recommendations made by the cultural resource protocol review reports.

Integration: To achieve ecosystem-level scientific understanding of the relationships between resources of the CRE and Glen Canyon Dam operations, integration of long-term monitoring between physical, cultural, biological, and recreational resources is required. The inventory and mapping of system-wide geomorphic features and substrates provides information about changes in open and vegetated areas (camping beaches) and changes in the old and new high water vegetative communities. The primary goal for this project is to document geomorphology, including Holocene deposits to redefine the area of potential affect (APE) under the Programmatic Agreement program

General Project Description: The primary goal for this project is to document geomorphology, including Holocene deposits for purposes of assessing impacts related to dam operations and cultural resources. The Holocene terrace deposits are a coverage that would be applied to the topographic base map. In some areas, geomorphic base maps currently exist.

Project Goals and Objectives:

- To measure, record and map geomorphic features and substrates throughout the river ecosystem.
- Mapping of the Holocene terrace deposits within the canyon to geomorphically define the area potentially affected by dam operations relative to sediment deposits, cultural, and recreational resources.
- Provide a focal area for the investigation of geomorphic processes and linkages with dam operations and the archaeological remains.

MOs Addressed: This project addresses cultural resource MOs 11.1 and 11.2.

Expected Products:

- Compilation of existing data including previously mapped areas, remotely sensed data, and modeled information and the underlying data sources.
- Integration of existing and new data to produce a map with Holocene terrace deposits
- Map data with geomorphological definition of area potentially affected by dam operations relative to sediment deposits, cultural, and recreational resources

Recommended Approach/Methods: This project will provide a companion effort to a BOR workshop to be held in FY 2003. That workshop will define available and existing

information and resources to accomplish geomorphic mapping. It is anticipated that much of the necessary information to complete this project may exist or has been previously collected. Existing sources of information may include previously mapped areas, remotely sensed data, and modeled information and the underlying data sources. The scope and scale of this project will be determined by existing data as identified by FY 2003 workshop and mapping efforts. Depending on the outcome of the work effort, this project may be reduced in scale or cancelled. If the project is cancelled, these monies will be reprogrammed into another project(s) in discussion with the AMWG stakeholders.

Status: This is the second and final year for this project. The scale of this project may be modified, based on the initial scoping workshop and the first year of mapping. The estimated cost of the final year of this project is \$ 112,850.

External Project Awards: The first year mapping project is anticipated to be awarded in FY 2003. Contingent on the first year project, this project will be awarded in FY 2004.

Project Accomplishments: There are no accomplishments to date, as this project has not been awarded.

Schedule: This project will be initiated in FY 2002 and will be a two-year effort. This project may be amended in scale of effort and duration based on the outcome of the BOR FY 2003 scoping workshop. The project may also be revised based on the recommendations of a cultural resource research design that addresses numerous issues, including geomorphic research issues, that will be completed prior to the initiation of the proposed project.

Fall	Winter	Spring	Summer	Fall
Continuation of data compilation and mapping efforts initiated in 2003				September Report to AMP

Budget: \$112,850

MAPPING HOLOCENE TERRACES Description	New in FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)			
Cultural Program Manager 0.05	3,000	4,500	4,850
Biology Program Manager	4,450		
Physical Program Manager	4,450		
Contracts			
Cultural	100,000	100,000	100,000
Technical Support Services			
Logistics	39,200	7,000	8,000
GIS - GIS Specialist	6,000		
TOTAL	157,100	111,500	112,850

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: A.5. CULTURAL DATA BASE PLAN

Rationale/Problem Statement: Cultural resource data currently exists in a number of locations, including federal agency and tribal databases. Consolidation of data will assist the AMP assessment efforts.

Initial efforts in FY 2001 include identification of existing and available data within the NPS units and within the tribal groups. Assessment of the type and extent of data and existing data structures and systems will also be made. Issues of data sensitivity and appropriate dissemination will also be addressed.

Integration: To achieve an ecosystem-level of understanding of the relationships between resources of the CRE and Glen Canyon Dam operations, integration of long-term monitoring between physical, cultural, biological, and recreational resources is required. This project will provide a means to consolidate the cultural resource data to assist in an ecosystem assessment of the resources.

General Project Description: This project was originally approved in the FY 2002 but has been delayed until FY 2004, due to completion of the research design project for the

HPP. The overall objective of this project is to consolidate cultural data for utilization by the AMP.

Project Goals and Objectives:

- Provide a plan and structure to consolidate cultural resource data that is currently held in various locations.
- Provide a methodology for the appropriate transfer of data
- Address issues of data sensitivity and confidentiality

MOs Addressed: This project addresses cultural resource management objectives and information needs (MO4) and implements recommendations by the cultural PEP.

Expected Products/Deliverables:

- Database plan for the continued consolidation of existing and new data for the AMP
- Project is one component of the Historic Preservation Plan
- Public dissemination of information, as appropriate.

Recommended Approach/Methods: Efforts in FY 2002 will include, but are not limited to, formulating the appropriate data structure, given the existing types of available data and data structures, address data links with NPS and tribal locations, data compatibility with existing databases and GCMRC data bases, and data security. Development of the database plan will require close coordination and interface with all cultural resource entities.

Status: Approved in FY 2002 but delayed until FY 2004. The estimated cost of the project is \$24,850 for GCMRC's portion. The BOR will contribute approximately \$25,000, for a total project cost of \$50,000.

External Project Awards: There have been no external awards to date.

Project Accomplishments: There are no accomplishments to date, as this project has not been initiated.

Schedule: The project duration is anticipated to be one year. The estimated cost of the project is \$ 24, 850 for GCMRC's portion. **The BOR will contribute approximately \$25,000, for a total project cost of \$50,000.**

Budget: \$24,850

CULTURAL DATA BASE PLAN	New in		
Description	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)			
Cultural Program Manager 0.05	13,350		4,850
Computer Specialist (DBMS)	3,700		
Contracts			
Cultural	25,000		20,000
TOTAL	42,050	0	24,850

**PROJECT TITLE TERRESTRIAL HABITAT MAP AND INVENTORY
(INACTIVE-TO RESUME IN FY06-07)**

Rationale/Problem Statement: This project addresses recommendations made in the terrestrial, cultural resource, and sediment protocol review reports. Terrestrial mapping of the Colorado River corridor is required for spatial monitoring of physical, biological, and cultural resources. Terrestrial mapping usually produces a digital terrain model (DTM) in combination with the XYZ position of features and artifacts. Periodic mapping of the same areas can be used for change detection of resources. Attributes associated with a coverage type can also be used as a predictive tool for monitoring and research.

Mapping requires a combination of field surveys and remotely-sensed data (photogrammetry, LIDAR). Field surveys yield a very high precision DTM with a contour resolution of 25 to 50 centimeters (cm). The accuracy is dependent on the geodetic control available. Photogrammetry data, as in our current GIS sites, are sub-meter precision and are displayed at one half-meter contour. It is an objective of GCMRC to establish a sub-meter accuracy terrestrial topographic base map of the entire river corridor to support long-term monitoring. This is only feasible using remotely-

sensed data such as photogrammetry or LIDAR. Coverages that identify vegetation communities would be layers applied to the topographic base map.

We currently have sub-meter accuracy terrestrial topographic coverage of approximately 80 miles of the CRE in 17 areas of concentrated scientific effort that we refer to as GIS sites. Coverages for vegetation communities have not been inventoried in a system-wide sense (within all GIS sites) since 1992 (Waring, 1993). In the absence of a system-wide topographic map being available, an updated coverage of the vegetation communities within the existing geo-reference sites would provide information about the total area of vegetation within these GIS sites and can form the basis for expansion throughout the canyon as the system-wide topographic base map is developed.

Integration: To achieve ecosystem-level scientific understanding of the relationships between resources of the CRE and Glen Canyon Dam operations, integration of long-term monitoring between physical, cultural, biological, and recreational resources is required. The inventory and mapping of system-wide vegetation communities provides information about changes in open and vegetated areas (camping beaches) and changes in the old and new high water vegetative communities as a whole (e.g., how have marsh community areas changed since 1992?). The primary goal for this project is to document compositional changes in the vegetated terrestrial habitat at an 80 mile coverage, at least, to complement field based surveys that occur at a fine scale. This project complements Holocene Deposit mapping efforts (see project A.7).

General Project Description: This project will develop the first comprehensive map of terrestrial and riparian vegetation in the CRE that allows characterization of community level attributes and provides the opportunity to track changes over time. Data collection and analysis that permits the development of a geo-referenced, GIS based map of the terrestrial environment including physical (geomorphic at least Holocene deposits) and biological coverages (vegetation communities within the old and new high water zone).

Project Goals and Objectives: To measure, record and map terrestrial habitat throughout the river ecosystem, including the various geomorphic features and substrates, and vegetation communities. These data will be related to available habitat relative to

annual operations of Glen Canyon Dam and compared with change since 1992 and earlier years as permissible with existing data. Specific objectives of the project include:

- Provide a baseline of vegetated and open terrestrial habitat that can be used for long-term, community-based change detection.
- To provide a vegetation map of the river corridor that uses a uniform hierarchical vegetation classification system that is compatible with NPS park units and AMP program purposes.
- Develop a spatial database of sampled and un-sampled areas to help quantify characters that define good vs. bad habitat for terrestrial invertebrates and vertebrates.
- The vegetation data will be compared to 1996, 1992 and earlier year data to detect and study changes.

MOs Addressed: This project addresses MOs under Goal 6 including 6.1, 6.2, 6.3., 6.4., and 6.5..

Expected Products:

- Vegetation coverage for GIS network.
- Randomized sampling design for terrestrial resource survey.

Recommended Approach/Methods: The overall mapping effort will use photo interpretation and ground-truth methodologies. The vegetation community designation will use methods that conform to national vegetation mapping standards. Finer scale community delineation may occur for some community associations. Digital overflight data (CIR) provided by GCMRC for the vegetation mapping project will be used to construct a comprehensive GIS based map of the entire CRE at a resolution of less than 0.5 meters.

The project will incorporate the National Vegetation Classification Standards, Standard Field Methodologies and Accuracy Assessment Procedures developed in cooperation by the National Biological Survey and National Park Service and the Nature Conservancy (NBS/NPS 1994). Similar mapping efforts were completed for the Gray Ranch in New Mexico, the Yampa River in Colorado, and the Badlands in South Dakota (NBS/NPS 1994).

The National Park Service has undertaken a program of inventory and monitoring of its National Parks (NPS-75). Part of this effort includes developing vegetation maps

for the park lands. The NPS Vegetation Mapping Project uses standard field methods and classification schemes for all parks. The minimum mapping unit for the NPS effort is 0.5 hectares and a scale of 1:24,000. The minimum mapping unit for GCMRC's purposes is 100 m or smaller and at a scale of at least 1:5000. Our efforts will be more detailed but, will provide the minimum information required by the NPS mapping effort, as well.

Classification System for the CRE. Spence et al. (1995) provided an outline for a preliminary classification for the Colorado Plateau that was presented to the series level. An example of a series from this classification scheme for the CRE would be coyote willow with a vegetation association of seep willow and horsetails. This would map vegetation at a scale that has been utilized since 1996 (Kearsley and Ayers 1996). To meet National Vegetation Classification Standards, the series and associations that will form the basis for polygon delineation on the vegetation map will use existing vegetation plot data (Kearsley and Ayers 1996) to verify associations or to redefine associations for this effort. Previous associations (Kearsley and Ayers 1996) were developed using multivariate analysis (e.g., TWINSPAN, Hill 1979) and this will be done again for this effort. Results will be compared with existing associations for the river corridor, signatures identified from previous aerial photography and the needs of the National Park Service as well as the Adaptive Management Program. Examples of the classification hierarchy is:

1. WOODLAND
 2. Juniper woodland alliance
 - a. Juniper/rice grass alliance
 - b. Ponderosa Pine/Juniper alliance

The latter two (a and b) would be the level at which a polygon would be developed and given a unique number for that particular polygon. In the CRE alliances include coyote willow and seep willow/horsetails, based on previous TWINSPAN Analysis (Kearsley and Ayers 1996). The minimum amount of area that this association has to cover in order to be included into a polygon with this designation could be 100 m or about 25 m square. The minimum mapping area, or size of the polygon still needs to be determined. A

product of this mapping project will be a vegetation description/field key for associations in the Colorado River ecosystem.

Status:

External Project Awards: Contractor to be identified in early 2002

Project Accomplishments: None to report -new start in FY 2002

Schedule: This project was initiated in FY 2002 and will be a two-year effort. This project may be amended in scale of effort and duration based on the outcome of the CIR digital overflight data collection in FY 2002. Current plans call for this project and a revised map to be reactivated and repeated every five years to access change in the CRE riparian vegetation community. In the area pertaining to cultural resources, the project may also be revised based on the recommendations of a cultural resource research design that addresses numerous issues, including geomorphic research issues. This will be done prior to the completion of the proposed project

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: A.6. KANAB AMBERSNAIL TAXONOMY

Rationale/Problem Statement: Kanab ambersnail is a federally listed endangered species occurring in one location in Grand Canyon: Vasey's Paradise. The taxonomic ranking of this taxon is currently unresolved, but it is currently considered a taxon that is endemic to Vasey's Paradise, within the Colorado River ecosystem. The snail and its habitat is a unique ecosystem determined to be of concern by stakeholders. The site is also a traditional cultural resource to all Native American stakeholders. The abundance and distribution of the snail and the quality of its habitat is influenced by operations of Glen Canyon Dam, as well as by springs located at Vasey's Paradise (Diagram 2). Furthermore management of this snail has implications for adaptive management experiments associated with releases from Glen Canyon Dam. Resolving the taxonomy of this snail and learning more about its relationship with other taxa within the Succinidea will assist the AMP and Grand Canyon National Park in management strategies associated with this taxon and discharges as well as accessibility to this site by humans.

Integration: Vasey's Paradise is a site that is a unique physical feature that has biological, cultural and recreational value. The primary goal for this research project is to

expand on the genetic and morphological and ecological information associated with this and related snail taxa to provide more management tools associated with mitigation or other management strategies of this resource at this site.

General Project Description: The Kanab ambersnail taxonomy project will use existing collections as well as expand on the collection of snails within the Oxlyoma complex in order to better understand and delineate relationships of the Vasey's Paradise taxon to other species and populations within the Colorado Plateau. Resolution of these relationships may clarify management strategies associated with this taxon relative to adaptive management experiments. The project will use multivariate morphologic and geographic methods of analysis as well as modern genetic analysis that may include mitochondrial DNA or Amplified Fragment Length Polymorphisms (AFLP's).

Project Goals & Objectives: The purpose of this project is to examine and resolve the taxonomic relationship of the snail at Vasey's Paradise relative to Kanab ambersnail associated at its type locality and to other outgroups. The objective of this project is to:

- Understand the relationship of *Oxyloma haydeni* complex and the status of the taxon at Vasey's Paradise within this complex.

MOs Addressed: Responds to MO 5.1.

Expected Products:

- Yearly progress reports and a final report. Final products to be determined through RFP development process.

Recommended Approaches/Methods: Utilize a phylogenetic approach to resolve the taxonomy of the complex including morphological, geographical, genetic characters for phylogenetic tree construction. This project will require surveys and collection of snails outside of the Colorado River ecosystem to ensure a thorough understanding of the ecology and life history of the Kanab ambersnail at Vasey's Paradise relative to other snail populations and species. GCMRC will develop and issue an RFP in late FY02 or early FY03 to address these issues. This project is being advanced in priority due to concerns expressed by the TWG. GCMRC will need to seek additional matching funds

from outside sources in the amount of approximately \$30,000 to cover the first year of an anticipated 2-3 year research project with a projected total budget of \$300,000.

Status:

External Project Awards: New Project.

Project Accomplishments: New Project.

Schedule:

Oct-December	January-March	April-June	July-September
Release and award RFP	Collection permit process and field surveys/initiate lab work on existing specimens		Field surveys Lab extractions/analysis

Budget: \$25,850 (Estimated cost of \$100,000 for external contract.) Funding provided by the Biological Resources Discipline, USGS.

KANAB AMBERSNAIL TAXONOMY	New in	
Description	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary		
Biologist - Terrestrial	0.05	3,850
Contracts		
Biology	70,000	22,000
TOTAL	70,000	25,850

Note: FY04: \$50k reprogrammed to New Research in Terrestrial Ecosystems

Outside Funding Requests	FY-2003	FY-2004
Contracts	30,000	100,000
TOTAL	30,000	100,000

Note: BRD (D. Fenn) will fund project from appropriations FY03 - FY05)

B. AQUATIC ECOSYSTEM ACTIVITIES

ONGOING PROJECTS:

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: B.1., B.2. MONITORING AQUATIC FOODBASE

Rationale/Problem Statement: The aquatic foodbase refers to the phyto-benthic community (algae, macrophytes and invertebrates) that are utilized by consumers such as fish, birds. Like the vegetative communities on land, the algae and macrophytes either form habitat that is utilized by invertebrates and vertebrates, or provide a source of food to these and other organisms as consumers. The composition, density and structure of the foodbase are affected by dam operations (volume, water quality of discharge), colonizing substrate (sand or cobble) as well as top down effects (overpopulation, overgrazing). The condition of the aquatic foodbase is fundamentally the basis for the status of higher-level species such as trout, waterfowl, and native fish (see Diagram 3). The relationships between basic productivity, benthic invertebrate communities, and higher trophic level organisms is complex. The occupation and use of habitats or resources by all organisms is dependent on their quality, distribution and availability. The relationships between operations from Glen Canyon Dam, nutrient levels, natural fine and coarse-sediment inputs that form substrate for aquatic habitats and their colonization and use along the Colorado River ecosystem resources are a management concern. Monitoring data on these ecosystem elements provide information on the effectiveness of the primary experimental flow treatment (Secretary's 1996 Record of Decision) relative to stated resource management objectives.

Monitoring of phytobenthic communities and evaluating their quality for utilization: (1) allows managers to assess the status of this community throughout the Colorado River ecosystem; (2) provides data that allows identification and interpretation of linkages between physical and biotic variables; (3) provides data on the effect of periodic management of sediment through high flows under the Record of Decision on the phytobenthic community and higher trophic levels.

Dam releases (discharge volume & reservoir water quality at penstocks or other outlets)

Available habitat and nutrients for colonization or utilization by algae and aquatic plants

Sediment input & turbidity

Productivity and composition of vegetation provide habitat or are direct food source for invertebrates and vertebrates

Higher trophic level organisms consume invertebrate foodbase (fish, waterfowl)

Human interactions by way of recreation (catch & release, harvest)

Diagram 3. Illustration of the links between operations, water quality, available aquatic habitat, productivity and consumption by higher-level organisms. There are both bottom-up (sediment and water) and top-down (harvesting, population densities) interactions that affect this resource.

Integration: To achieve ecosystem-level scientific understanding of the relationships between resources of the Colorado River and Glen Canyon Dam operations, integration of long-term monitoring between physical, cultural, biological, and recreational resources is required. The primary goal is to document significant changes in the composition, structure and volume/density of the phyto-benthic community within the main channel resulting from interactions of dam operations, changes in sediment supply (substrate) within the context of the Colorado River's geomorphic framework that may affect higher trophic level organisms.

General Project Description: The collection of data that monitors the influences of Glen Canyon Dam operations on the productivity and quality of the aquatic foodbase (phyto-benthic community) in the CRE as it relates to higher trophic level needs. Develops linkages between elements of the aquatic foodbase and higher trophic level organisms of direct management concern.

Project Goals and Objectives: The project serves two purposes: 1. to collect organic carbon (invertebrates to dissolve organic carbon) to characterize carbon production and usage in the aquatic system on a yearly and seasonal basis relative to discharge and abiotic factors (suspended sediment, turbidity, pH, temperature, DO). 2. to sample for benthic organism to document composition along the river corridor. Monitoring of phytobenthic communities and evaluating their quality for utilization: (1) allows managers to assess the status of this community throughout the Colorado River ecosystem; (2) provides data that allows identification and interpretation of linkages between physical and biotic variables; (3) provides data on the effect of periodic management of sediment through high flows under the Record of Decision on the phytobenthic community and higher trophic levels.

FY 2004 Objectives: To understand the relationship of organic carbon inputs from heterotrophic and autotrophic sources and their relative contribution to carbon budget in the aquatic system on a temporal and spatial scale. To begin to understand how carbon values relate to fish community densities and distributions. To determine the composition and density of benthos along the river corridor and describe these data relative to previously collected data.

MOs Addressed: The aquatic foodbase monitoring and evaluation project provides information needs related to MOs 1.2, 1.4, 1.5.

Expected Products:

- Quarterly and annual report on productivity and benthic composition, linked with water quality data collection
- Fact sheet in association with water quality data
- Data delivery on quarterly basis.
- A synthesis report and peer-reviewed publication on the past 10 years of food base monitoring and research in the CRE.

Recommended Approach/Methods: The methods for monitoring the phyto-benthic community underwent protocol review (PEP) in March of 2001. The review also included the downstream fish monitoring program and elements of the water quality program. The panel participated in a downstream river trip along with PI's to see first

hand logistic constraints of the system. The PEP report discussed existing sites, sampling methodology visitation of tributary mouths and integration of sampling with fishery monitoring. The results of that panel review are being used to determine the methods and approaches for long-term monitoring of this resource. It is anticipated that much of the new protocol for this project will be completed in FY 2004.

One element that will likely be incorporated is developing a tighter link between sampling of the aquatic vegetation and invertebrates and fish. Sampling currently takes place at fixed locations. Future sampling may become randomized. Additionally, the Glen Canyon area--which is currently not included with downstream sampling--will be included into the sampling domain. The intent to effectively measure and characterize changes in available river channel habitat and the benthic communities' composition and structure as prescribed. Structural and compositional data collected may be scheduled to coincide with important seasonal changes or projected changes in operations. Under contingency plans, additional measurements of the phyto-benthic community will occur in the event of large-scale flow experiments (e.g., BHBF and SASF).

As a result of cooperator sampling (NPS at Glen Canyon National Recreation Area) there has recently been confirmation of a new invasive aquatic species in the CRE. The New Zealand Mud Snail, *Potamopyrgus antipodarum*, was first confirmed in the Glen Canyon reach and has now been documented throughout the CRE. This species attains very high densities in some stream and river systems and is known to occur in 5-6 populations in the U.S. The species will be the subject of future monitoring and research in the CRE.

Status: Implemented in FY 2002. Likely to be revised based on PEP recommendations.

External Project Awards: Unknown at this time.

Project Accomplishments: Unknown at this time.

Schedule: While long-term monitoring was revised in FY 2002 to reflect the PEP and subsequent TWG recommendations, the current phyto-benthic monitoring contains elements that are similar to projected long-term monitoring goals. Integration of current and future monitoring techniques will be initiated in FY 2002 and continued annually

through at least FY 2005 through contract and/or cooperative agreements determined through competitive RFP, or through GCMRC staff work.

Oct-December	January-March	April-June	July-September
Analysis and report delivery for previous two quarters		Analysis and report delivery for previous two quarters	

Budget: \$179,600

B.1. AQUATIC FOODBASE – EXTERNAL					
Description		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)					
Biology Program Manager	0.05	4,350	4,450	5,150	5,800
Biologist - Terrestrial	0.10	1,220	3,000	0	7,700
Biologist - Aquatic	0.25	3,050	3,000	38,400	19,250
Ecologist		6,100	6,000	0	0
Biology Student	0.20			3,600	3,400
Hydrologist - Limnologist	0.05			4,800	4,050
Hydrologic Technician	0.05			2,600	2,400
Physical Program Manager		1,740	1,780	0	0
Contracts					
Biology		230,000	235,000	180,000	121,000
Technical Support Services					
Logistics		10,000	58,800	14,000	8,000
Other Operating Expenses				8,000	8,000
TOTAL		256,460	312,030	256,550	179,600

Budget: \$91,250

B.2. AQUATIC FOODBASE – IN HOUSE Description				New in FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)				
Biology Program Manager				0
Biologist - Terrestrial				0
Biologist - Aquatic	0.25			19,250
Biology Student				0
Hydrologist - Limnologist				0
Hydrologic Technician				0
Physical Program Manager				0
Contracts				
Biology				65,000
Technical Support Services				
Logistics				7,000
Other Operating Expenses				
TOTAL		0	0	0
				91,250

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: B.3. MONITORING OF THE STATUS AND TRENDS OF DOWNSTREAM FISH COMMUNITY

Rationale/Problem Statement: The downstream fish community is an assemblage of native and non-native fish that occur in the Colorado River ecosystem. This assemblage is exclusive of the trout fishery that is managed in Glen Canyon by the Arizona Game and Fish Department. The constituents include four native fish and introduced competitors/predators like rainbow trout, brown trout, channel catfish, carp, and striped bass. The status and trends of the fishery are regulated by biotic and abiotic mechanisms that may in turn be affected by the operations of Glen Canyon Dam. Community traits such as spawning and recruitment are influenced by the quality of substrate, water, and food. Competitive interactions between fish species may also account for species abundance and distribution. The relationships between operations from Glen Canyon Dam (e.g. water temperature, natural fine and coarse-sediment inputs that form substrate for aquatic habitats and their colonization) and use by fish along the Colorado River ecosystem resources are a management concern (Diagram 4). Monitoring data on these ecosystem elements provide information on the effectiveness of the primary experimental

flow treatment (Secretary's 1996 Record of Decision) relative to stated resource management objectives.

Monitoring of the fish community: (1) allows managers to assess the status of this community throughout the Colorado River ecosystem; (2) may provides data that allows identification and interpretation of linkages between physical and biotic variables; (3) provides data on the effect of periodic management of sediment and flow under the Record of Decision on the fish community and the resources on which it depends.

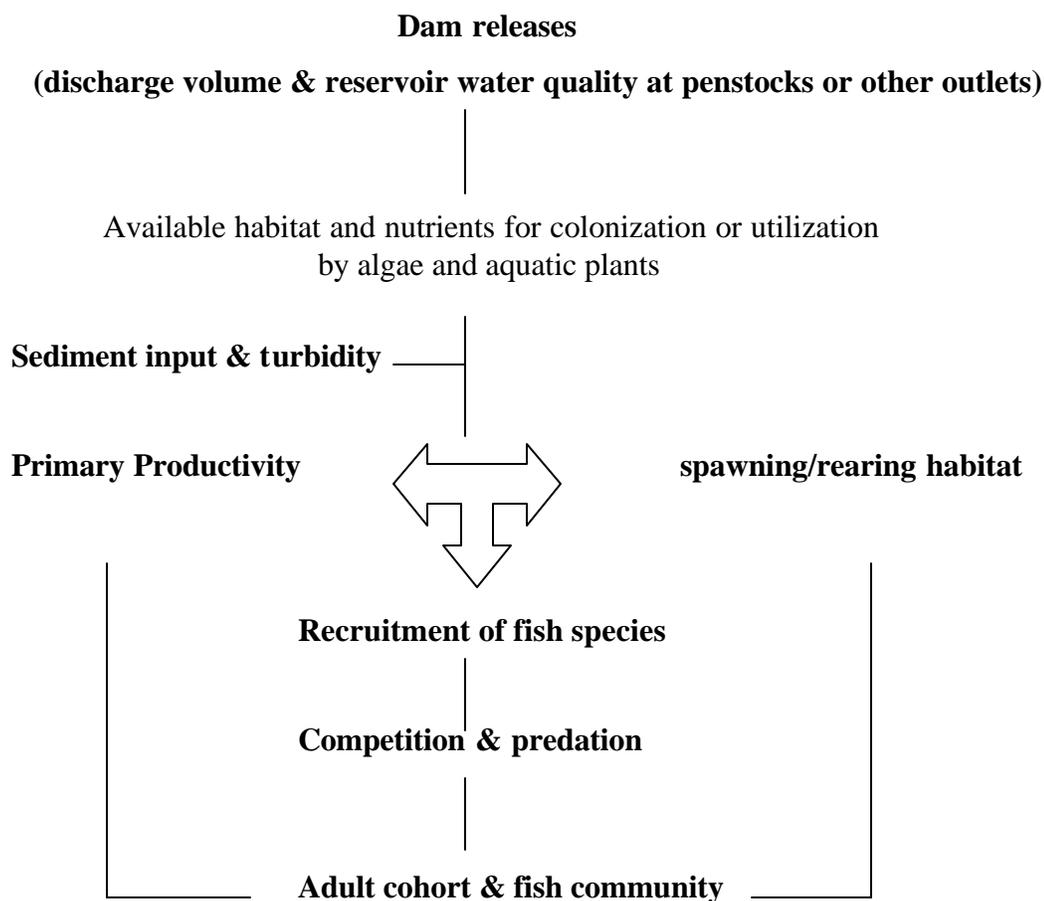


Diagram 4. Illustration of interactions and linkages between discharge, habitat, productivity and the fish community. There are bottom-up effects associated with operations, habitat and productivity and top-down, or fish species interactions that also come into play in this system.

Integration: To achieve ecosystem-level scientific understanding of the relationships between resources of the Colorado River and Glen Canyon Dam operations, integration of long-term monitoring between physical, cultural, biological, and recreational resources

is required. The primary goal is to document significant changes in the abundance and distribution of the fish community within the main channel resulting from interactions of dam operations, changes in sediment supply (substrate), fish community and potentially the phyto-benthic community within the Colorado River ecosystem.

General Project Description: Collection of data that monitors abundance and distribution of native and non-native fish to allow determination of the influences of Glen Canyon Dam operations on the fish community in the Colorado River ecosystem, includes those native fish found (e.g., Flannelmouth suckers) in the Glen Canyon reach.

Project Goals and Objectives: To annually measure, assess and report abundance and distribution of the fish community. These data will be related to changes relative to annual operations of Glen Canyon Dam, sediment inputs (coarse and fine) monitoring data, and food base monitoring data downstream of the dam. This project is an integrated effort involving personnel from the USFWS, SWCA, the AGFD, and GCMRC to collect data that monitors the status and trends of native and non-native fishes in the mainstem, including those native fish found (e.g., Flannelmouth suckers) in the Glen Canyon reach.

FY 2004 Objectives:

- Provide population estimates for adult native fish (HBC, FMS, BHS).
- Determine potential cohort strength for Humpback chub at age 1.5 (> 120 mm).
- Determine population estimates for rainbow and brown trout in mainstem below Paria riffle
- Track distribution and relative abundance of these (above) and other fish species including carp, catfish, and other potential warm water competitors.

MOs Addressed: Addresses Goal 2, MOs 2.1, 2.2, 2.3, 2.8, Goal 4.

Expected Products:

- Yearly stock assessment/synthesis report for native and non-native fish.
- Yearly Fact Sheet
- Trip reports following each trip that summarizes general catch effort and preliminary results.

- Evaluation of alternative sampling designs that may be tested.
- Data delivery following every sampling trip.

Recommended Approach/Methods: Fish community data will be measured using field-based survey measurements to provide population estimates for those fish that exist in sufficient numbers to characterize change in the fish community. Those species likely to be estimated are humpback chub, flannelmouth sucker, rainbow trout, brown trout and carp. This project will generally employ a stock assessment approach which estimates recruitment to the adult (reproducing) population in combination with instantaneous population estimates for some species and index sampling based on catch per unit effort to estimate distribution and abundance of less numerous species.

Parameters of interest with respect to humpback chub are population estimates in the Little Colorado River (LCR) and spawning success and recruitment in the LCR, and distribution of adults and juveniles in the mainstem. Similar information will be needed for each species and will include sampling flannelmouth sucker spawning sites in Glen Canyon and at the Paria River mouth. Data collected (shocking effort) in Glen Canyon for the trout system will be incorporated into downstream monitoring. And the shocking effort in Glen Canyon will help in the calibration of this gear-type downstream. If additional gear types need to be deployed in the Glen Canyon reach for flannelmouth sucker, it will be this project that will be responsible for deployment and data collection. Field data associated with the fish community will be scheduled to coincide with important life history stages (e.g., spawning/overwintering survival, fall recruitment). The project will use mark recapture techniques for YOY to adult for native fish and depletion as well as mark/recapture for brown and rainbow fish

Randomized sampling for general survey of fish abundance and distribution Under contingency plans, additional measurements of the fish community will occur in the event of large-scale flow experiments (e.g., BHBF and SASF)..

Status: Implemented in FY 2002. Will be revised based on PEP recommendations.

External Project Awards: Cooperative agreement with Arizona Game and Fish Department, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, GCMRC and SWCA Inc. Final year of

effort for design of monitoring. Project work in FY 2004 will implement new monitoring framework.

Project Accomplishments: Completion of historic data analysis and development of recommendations for long-term monitoring of fish in the Colorado River ecosystem.

Schedule: Integration of current and future monitoring techniques were initiated in FY 2002 and will continue annually through at least FY 2004 through contract and (or) cooperative agreements. An RFP will be released in summer of 2004 for long term monitoring to be conducted from FY 2004-2009.

Oct-December	January-March	April-June	July-September
Development of field schedule, yearly proposed activities	Implementation of field schedule, delivery of previous year's report	Field collection, data analysis. Development of monitoring recommendations. RFP release.	Field collection, data analysis.

Budget: \$856,210

STATUS & TRENDS OF DOWNSTREAM FISH					
Description		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)					
Biology Program Manager	0.15	4,350	4,450	10,300	17,400
Biologist - Aquatic		6,100	6,000	0	0
Biologist - Fisheries	0.75			48,000	54,750
Biologist - Terrestrial		1,220	3,000	0	0
Ecologist		9,150	9,000	0	0
Biology Student	0.60	3,600	3,400	10,800	10,200
Physical Program Manager	0.02	1,740	1,780	1,700	1,860
Contracts					
Biology		460,000	469,000	570,000	587,000
Technical Support Services					
Logistics		90,000	176,200	153,000	169,000
Other Operating Expenses				15,000	16,000
TOTAL		576,160	672,830	808,800	856,210

Appropriations - Requested Funding	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Contracts		180,000	120,000	
Services - Logistics		20,000		
TOTAL		200,000	120,000	0

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: B.4. MONITORING OF THE STATUS AND TRENDS OF THE LEES FERRY TROUT FISHERY

Rationale/Problem Statement: The Lees Ferry trout fishery refers to the tailwaters portion of the Colorado River ecosystem managed by Arizona Game and Fish Department. This fishery represents an important recreational and economic resource. This assemblage includes flannelmouth suckers and competitors such as carp and catfish. The status and trends of the fishery is linked to the phytobenthic community and to operations of Glen Canyon Dam. Community traits such as spawning and recruitment are influenced by the quality of substrate, water, and food. Competitive interactions between trout and other fish species and among trout may also account for population

status. The relationships between operations from Glen Canyon Dam, natural fine and coarse-sediment inputs that form substrate for aquatic habitats and their colonization and use by trout in the Glen Canyon portion of the Colorado River ecosystem resources are a management concern (Diagram 4). Monitoring data on these ecosystem elements provide information on the effectiveness of the primary experimental flow treatment (Secretary's 1996 Record of Decision) relative to stated resource management objectives.

Monitoring of the rainbow trout population: (1) allows managers to assess the status of this population in Glen Canyon; (2) provides data that allows identification and interpretation of linkages between physical and biotic variables; (3) provides data on the effect of periodic management of flows under the Record of Decision on the trout population in Glen Canyon and the resources it depends on including the phyto-benthic community.

Integration: To achieve ecosystem-level scientific understanding of the relationships between resources of the Colorado River and Glen Canyon Dam operations, integration of long-term monitoring between physical, cultural, biological, and recreational resources is required. The primary goal is to document significant changes in the abundance, age structure and condition of the trout population in Glen Canyon resulting from interactions to dam operations, changes in sediment supply (substrate), and the phyto-benthic community within the Colorado River ecosystem. These data are used to augment downstream fish community monitoring.

General Project Description: Monitoring the influences of Glen Canyon Dam operations on the Lees Ferry trout fishery in the Colorado River ecosystem.

Project Goals and Objectives: To annually measure, assess and report on abundance, age structure and condition of the rainbow trout population in Glen Canyon. These data will be related to changes relative to annual operations of Glen Canyon Dam and phyto-benthic monitoring data downstream of the dam. The purpose of this project is To collect data to determines that proportional stock density, condition and population estimates of age II+ rainbow trout in Lees Ferry/Glen Canyon Reach as it relates to Glen Canyon Dam operations.

FY 2004 Objectives: Sample in such a manner to provide population estimates for age II+ trout annually. Determine relative densities of trout in relationship to habitat sampled to refine population estimates. Continue to input data into stock assessment model to establish status and trends for trout in Glen Canyon reach. Determine annual growth rates of trout and incorporate into status of fishery..

MOs Addressed: This project addresses Goal 4 and M.O. 4.1.

Expected Products:

- Annual report of status and trends of fishery
- Fact sheet of fishery
- Data delivery following each sampling period.
- Trip report following each sampling period

Recommended Approach/Methods: The trout population data will be collected using a field-based survey method that characterizes changes in the trout fishery in Glen Canyon (see Lees Ferry Protocol document: www.gcmrc.gov). Annual changes in trout size class distribution, recruitment and condition will be measured at monitoring sites. Populations change data associated with food or habitat resources will be extracted from phyto-benthic and sediment monitoring data. Field data associated with the trout population will be scheduled to coincide with important life history stages (e.g., winter spawning, summer recruitment). Under contingency plans, additional measurements of the trout population will occur in the event of large-scale flow experiments (e.g., BHBF and SASF).

Status: Ongoing from FY 2001.

External Project Awards: Cooperative agreement with Arizona Game and Fish Department. Final year of three-year project will be FY2003, new RFP issued for work in FY2004.

Project Accomplishments: Incorporation of random sites into sampling design at Lees Ferry. Calibration of CPUE of Lees Ferry trout to downstream effort. Incorporation of snorkel survey effort into monitoring.

Schedule: Long-term monitoring was initiated in FY 2001 and will be continued annually through at least FY 2004 through contract and (or) cooperative agreements.

Oct-December	January-March	April-June	July-September
Data collection, field effort coordination, Report delivery	Report review, Field work	Field work RFP Release	Field work

Budget: \$161,660

LEES FERRY TROUT FISHERY					
Description		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)					
Biological Program Manager	0.05	4,350	4,450	5,150	5,800
Biologist - Aquatic		3,050	3,000	0	0
Biologist - Terrestrial		1,220	3,000	0	0
Ecologist		6,100	6,000	0	0
Biologist - Fisheries	0.10			6,400	7,300
Biology Student	0.10			1,800	1,700
Physical Program Manager	0.02	1,740	1,780	1,700	1,860
Contracts					
Biology		120,000	90,000	110,000	113,000
Technical Support Services					
Logistics		10,000	19,600	20,000	22,000
Other Operating Expenses			10,000	10,000	10,000
TOTAL		146,460	137,830	155,050	161,660

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: B.5. INTEGRATED WATER QUALITY MONITORING: DOWNSTREAM ACTIVITIES

Rationale/Problem Statement: Water quality in the CRE has the potential to control or alter the composition and abundance of all biological components of the ecosystem from primary producers through fishes. Primary factors likely to influence these trophic levels are temperature, turbidity, and nutrient levels. A principal recommendation of the IWQP PEP was to focus water quality measurement efforts on downstream resources and to do so in a manner that clearly links water quality with the biotic community.

Integration: This program will be heavily integrated with the sediment transport studies in the physical sciences and with the sampling for aquatic foodbase and downstream fisheries efforts. Specific parameters and integration strategies are being developed in FY 2002.

General Project Description: This project collects data on water quality factors in the CRE.

Project Goals and Objectives: To collect data that characterizes the physical, chemical and biological quality of water from GC Dam discharge and downstream as they relate to operations of Glen Canyon Dam and to higher trophic level interactions including primary production and carbon cycling within the aquatic ecosystem

FY 2004 Objectives: To understand how standard water quality parameters change longitudinally downstream and in relation to discharge. To determine if changes are additive downstream or are characteristic by reach To collect data in a manner that compliments and is available to make linkages with primary productivity and carbon cycling in the aquatic ecosystem.

MOs Addressed: . Addresses Goal 7, MO 7.1, 7.2.

Expected Products:

- Quarterly and annual report of water quality with links to energy budget
- Fact sheet for water quality and productivity
- Data delivery on a quarterly basis.

Recommended Approaches/Methods: These are currently being developed as part of the IWQP five year plan.

Status: On-going. This project was initiated as a separate water quality monitoring effort in FY 2002 to begin an increased focus on water quality work in the CRE and to allow better integration with other biological and physical resource programs. This project will be conducted internally by GCMRC staff, although some analyses may be contracted.

External Project Awards: None

Project Accomplishments: Substantial temperature data was gathered during the LSSF experiments throughout the mainstem and in FY 2001. FY 2002 began a process of integration with fisheries and foodbase work and responsiveness to the Aquatic PEP Report.

Schedule: Sampling regimes and schedules are being developed as part of the IWQP five-year plan.

Budget: \$199,900

IWQP DOWNSTREAM						
Description			FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)						
Biology Program Manager	0.05	6,090	6,230	5,150	5,800	
Biologist - Aquatic	0.15	3,050	3,000	12,800	11,550	
Hydrologist	0.00	28,000	29,000	24,000	0	
Hydrologist - Limnologist	0.95	28,000	29,000	19,200	76,950	
Hydrologic Technician	0.45	12,000	12,000	10,400	21,600	
Ecologist		1,220	1,200	0	0	
Biology Student		900	850	0	0	
Contracts						
Biology			84,000	46,000	48,000	
Technical Support Services						
Logistics		8,000	15,700	32,000	36,000	
TOTAL		87,260	180,980	149,550	199,900	

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: B.6. INTEGRATED WATER QUALITY MONITORING LAKE POWELL

Rationale/Problem Statement: Water quality refers to the physical, chemical and biological characteristics of water. The components effect higher-level community composition, quality and interactions and represent a cornerstone resource upon which all other aquatic and terrestrial resources depend. The water quality parameters are linked to upper basin inflows, reservoir dynamics, and operations of Glen Canyon Dam, and downstream tributary inputs. The relationship between operations of Glen Canyon Dam and water quality variables affecting downstream resources is a management concern. Monitoring data on these ecosystem elements provide information on the effectiveness of the primary experimental flow treatment (Secretary's 1996 Record of Decision) relative to stated resource management objectives.

Understanding and predicting water quality parameters: (1) allows managers to assess the effects of dam operations on downstream water quality; (2) provides data that allows identification and interpretation of linkages between physical, chemical and biotic variables; (3) provides data on the effect of periodic management of sediment through high flows under the Record of Decision on the water quality in the reservoir (forebay) and downstream water quality.

Integration: To achieve ecosystem-level scientific understanding of the relationships between resources of the Colorado River and Glen Canyon Dam operations, integration of long-term monitoring between physical, cultural, biological, and recreational resources is required. The primary goal of this project is to document significant changes in the physical, chemical and biological constituents associated with water quality that can be linked to other Colorado River ecosystem resources.

General Project Description: Develop capability that monitors the influences of Glen Canyon Dam operations on the water quality in Lake Powell and downstream in the Colorado River ecosystem

Project Goals and Objectives: The goals are to provide further understanding of linkages between dam operations, water quality, and the aquatic ecosystem of the

Colorado River. This project will generate data through simulation modeling and field sampling that describes the physical, chemical and biological character of the water in the Lake Powell Reservoir and to determine how operations of Glen Canyon Dam and inflows into the dam affect water quality parameters. These data are necessary for downstream ecosystem monitoring and for monitoring of the lake ecosystem that is done by other entities (e.g., GCNRA, State of Utah).

FY 2004 Objectives:

- To finalize and implement simulation modeling of LP water quality,
- To know the season pattern and state of the parameters measured in Lake Powell
- To understand how inflows and release volumes affect water quality at the dam and tailwaters.
- To begin to use the knowledge of the reservoir dynamics to predict/hypothesize water quality changes and use monitoring data to validate hypotheses.

Recommended Approach/Methods: The monitoring program underwent protocol review in December 2000. The recommendations from the PEP panel will be used to revise the parameters to be monitored and the methods used in the long-term monitoring program, as appropriate. Based on results of simulation modeling conducted in FY 2002 a revised field sampling program will be implemented to verify the accuracy of the model outputs. The data for the water quality monitoring project will be collected using both field and remotely-based survey methods (data loggers) that characterize changes in water quality at prescribed long-term monitoring sites in the reservoir and along the Colorado River mainstem and its tributaries (see Vernieu and Hueftle, 1999). Field data associated with water quality will be scheduled to coincide with important seasonal changes associated with reservoir dynamics and that coincide with changes in dam operations. Under contingency plans, additional measurements of the water quality parameters will occur in the event of large-scale flow experiments (e.g., BHBF and SASF, temperature modification).

Status: On going. A revised IWQP will be implemented based on the recommendation of the December 2000 IWQP PEP, TWG recommendations, and results of FY 2002 modeling efforts.

External Project Awards: None, collaborative work on the CE-QUAL model for Lake Powell began in FY 2001.

Project Accomplishments: A draft five-year plan for the IWQP has been developed, routine sampling of the reservoir and forebay has been maintained.

Schedule: Long-term monitoring is to be instituted in FY 2004 based on simulation modeling efforts conducted in FY 2002. Integration of current and future modeling and monitoring techniques will be initiated in FY 2002 and continued annually through at least FY 2005 through contract and (or) cooperative agreements, or completed using GCMRC's personnel. Long-term plans (FY 2004 to 2005) should see a reduction in the cost and effort associated with Water Quality monitoring on Lake Powell.

Oct-December	January-March	April-June	July-September
Reservoir sampling, modeling effort	Reservoir sampling, modeling effort	Reservoir sampling, modeling effort	Reservoir sampling, annual report, modeling report

Budget: \$309,000

IWQP – LAKE POWELL DESCRIPTION		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
<u>Salary (includes benefits)</u>					
Biology Program Manager 0.05					5,800
Hydrologist 1.00		56,000	58,000	60,000	90,000
Hydrologist - Limnologist 0.00		54,000	56,000	58,000	0
Hydrologic Technician 0.50		24,000	31,000	33,000	24,000
Data Base Manager 0.35					28,700
Technical Support Services					
GIS Assistant 0.05					2,600
Operating Expenses		166,000	155,000	149,000	157,900
TOTAL		300,000	300,000	300,000	309,000

Total salary expense

NEW PROJECTS:**PROJECT TITLE AND ID: B.7. NEW RESEARCH ASSOCIATED INTERACTIONS BETWEEN NATIVE AND NON-NATIVE FISH SPECIES**

Rationale/Problem Statement: Non-native fish (brown trout, rainbow trout and catfish to name a few), are predators on native fish, and exist in great enough numbers in the mainstem to potentially pose a problem to native fish recruitment. Several proposed management strategies to increase native fish recruitment (temperature control device, experimental flows for fish) may also benefit non-native fish recruitment and increase predation pressure on native fish. The habitats that young native fish are found in are well documented. However, how the predation rates change on young fish as these variables change is not well known. Determining predation rates associated with variables like turbidity, temperature and velocities will help identify mainstem habitats or conditions that merit monitoring and possibly mitigation during flows designed to help native fish species recruitment. However, predation rates and susceptibility of young fish to these variables are not well known.

Collecting and analyzing data about fish species predation rates: (1) allows managers to assess the effects of dam operations aimed at supporting native fish on young fish and predators; (2) provides data that allows identification of potential threats to a resource that can be monitored, and mitigated for, during a proposed action. Based upon fish diet and predation rate information, studies of the potential control may be implemented. Such studies would be initiated in FY 2004.

Integration: To achieve ecosystem-level scientific understanding of the relationships between resources of the Colorado River and Glen Canyon Dam operations, integration of long-term monitoring between physical, cultural, biological, and recreational resources is required. The primary goal of this project is to determine interactions among native and non-native fish species in the mainstem.

General Project Description: Examining diet of fish to determine the predation rates by non-native fish (rainbow trout, brown trout) on native fish. Using this information to determine if predation is a significant source of mortality for native fishes. Develop

potential control strategies for non-native fishes to reduce predation potential on native species

Project Goals and Objectives: To determine if predator suppression is feasible in Grand Canyon. The target species are non-native fishes, particularly salmonids in the LCR reach and Bright Angel Creek area, as well as non-native warm water species in the LCR with the expected result being a positive response by native fish as it relates to recruitment to juvenile and adult populations, primarily HBC and FMS. Projects will include predator - prey interactions, competition, and bioenergetics model development. This research is intended to provide improved mechanistic understanding of the role of non-native fishes in the population dynamics of native species. Also includes design and technical assistance for non-native fish control efforts. This project will involve evaluation of data from the mechanical removal anticipated for implementation in FY 2003.

FY 2004 Objectives:

- Determine the effectiveness of a weir or other control methods in Bright Angel Creek to collect brown trout and to count numbers of fish entering the creek.
- Determine if by reducing the number of spawning brown trout adults if subsequent cohort strength declines for brown trout-linked to downstream fish monitoring project (may be an indication that spawning occurs other places than Bright Angel Creek).
- Determine if by reducing the number of year II+ brown trout increases recruitment to juvenile and adult native fish species via LTM mark/recapture program.
- Monitor and integrate/synthesize results of mechanical removal efforts in the LCR reach.
- Monitor and synthesize/integrate results of non-native fish removal efforts in the LCR.

MOs Addressed: This project addresses MO 2.6.

Expected Products:

- Yearly report of brown trout removed and fish counted in Bright Angel Creek.
- Delivery of data sheets following each sampling period.
- Recommendations regarding effectiveness of predator suppression in Grand Canyon and how might be applied to other identified species that pose a threat to native fish recruitment.

Recommended Approach/ Methods: This project is undergoing design and development in FY 2002.

Status: Ongoing

External Project Awards: None

Project Accomplishments: None

Schedule: This project will be conducted for at least three years. A specific field sampling and data analysis schedule has not yet been determined.

Budget: \$77,200

NATIVE & NON-NATIVE FISH SPECIES					
Description		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)					
Biology Program Manager	0.10	4,350	4,450	5,150	11,600
Biologist - Aquatic	0.35	6,100	6,000	12,800	26,950
Biologist - Fisheries	0.05			3,200	3,650
Ecologist		12,200	12,000		
Contracts					
Biology		40,000	41,000	34,000	35,000
TOTAL		62,650	63,450	55,150	77,200

Appropriations - Requested Funding	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Contracts		100,000	36,000	
Services - Logistics		25,000		
TOTAL	0	125,000	36,000	0

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: B.8. CAPTIVE BREEDING PROGRAM

Rationale/Problem Statement: This new project is intended to examine the feasibility of establishing a hatchery-based captive-breeding program for native fishes in the CRE, particularly Humpback Chub. Establishment and maintenance of captive breeding programs is a potentially viable means of species preservation when wild populations are in very low abundance. Conservation of genetic integrity for a species as well as maintenance and production of fish for supplemental stocking or reintroduction to the wild would be among the goals of such a program if established. The AMWG has recommended the development and use of a captive breeding facility for HBC.

Integration: This project will involve several on-going and previous GCMRC/AMP research and monitoring programs. The downstream fisheries monitoring project gathers relevant data regarding the status and trends of the populations of non-native fishes which is necessary information to enable decisions regarding the appropriate use and design of captive breeding programs. The humpback chub genetics project underway in FY01-03 should enable determination of genetic status, variability, and interbreeding (metapopulation status) of the HBC aggregations in the Grand Canyon. GCMRC has undertaken an effort to use unique isotopic signatures of tributary waters and fish to further elucidate the distributional characteristics of native fishes, which may be germane to how/if captive breeding programs are developed. GCMRC, interacts on a regular basis with biologists in the Upper Colorado River Basin where other HBC populations exist.

General Project Description: This project will use literature from the conservation biology and fish culture fields along with a practical analysis of design characteristics for facilities to develop a comprehensive feasibility analysis for a captive breeding program for T & E native species from the CRE. GCMRC will regularly report on findings related to this project to insure that it is meeting stakeholder expectations.

Project Goals and Objectives: Report on the feasibility of captive breeding programs and facilities for T & E species in the CRE.

FY 2004 Objectives: A specific set of objectives will be developed based on project scoping work conducted in FY03

MOs Addressed: This project addresses MO 2.6.

Expected Products:

Recommended Approach/ Methods: This project is undergoing design and development in FY 2002-03.

Status: New

External Project Awards: None

Project Accomplishments: None

Schedule:

Budget: \$50,000

CAPTIVE BREEDING PROGRAM	New in
Description	FY-2004
Contracts – Biology	50,000
TOTAL	50,000

Appropriated Funding Request	New in
DESCRIPTION	FY-2004
Contracts - Biology	100,000
TOTAL	100,000

***C. INTEGRATED TERRESTRIAL AND AQUATIC
ECOSYSTEM ACTIVITIES***

ONGOING PROJECTS:

**PROJECT TITLE AND ID: C.1a. INTEGRATED LONG-TERM
MONITORING OF FINE-GRAINED SEDIMENT STORAGE THROUGHOUT
THE MAIN CHANNEL**

Rationale/Problem Statement: Relationships between Glen Canyon Dam operations, fine-sediments input from gaged and ungaged tributaries below the dam, and interrelated downstream biological, socio-cultural resources are of primary management concern. This is true owing to the fact that sand bars are the primary substrate along many shoreline areas of the ecosystem. Monitoring data on fine-grained (sand and finer) deposits, linkages with physical habitats and relationships to non-physical resources and processes offer insight on the effectiveness of the Secretary's 1996 Record-of-Decision (ROD), relative to management objectives.

Annual-to-biennial monitoring of fine-grained sediment storage provides information: (1) on the status of near-shore aquatic and terrestrial habitats where vegetation and associated fauna, socio-cultural resources are of management concern; (2) on the availability of fine-grained sediment that can be periodically manipulated through controlled floods to preserve and sustain downstream resources dependent on fine sediment; (3) on identification and interpretation of linkages between dam operations and changes in physical habitats and related ecosystem resources. All three areas of information support science-based evaluations of large-scale flow experiments (e.g., the Secretary's actions), and associated decision responses required for adaptive management to succeed.

Integration: Fine-sediment deposits along the main channel form many physical habitats for both terrestrial and aquatic organisms of the ecosystem; including ethnobotanical resources. Fine-grained deposits are also sources and sinks for nutrients, recreational campsites and settings for in-situ preservation of cultural resources.

Information on the distribution and characteristics of these deposits must be measured in ways that can be related to dam operations. Further, the measurements must be made over spatial and temporal scales that allow fine-sediment related resources to be linked to changing conditions of the sediment budget. To promote full integration of fine-sediment data, oversight for this project is provided jointly by the GCMRC's physical, biological and socio-cultural program managers.

General Project Description: Fine-grained deposits (sand and finer) of the main channel constitute a major storage component of the Colorado River ecosystem's sediment budget. Glen Canyon Dam operations influence fine deposits in ways that affect aquatic and terrestrial habitats over both short and long periods. The emphasis of this long-term monitoring project shall be to document system-wide changes in fine-grained deposits relative to dam operations and natural inputs, with emphasis on key storage settings within critical reaches. This project was initiated through release of a competitive solicitation in October 2000, and shall be continued into year four during FY 2004. The first phase of this project is scheduled for completion at the end of FY 2005, and will be externally reviewed through the PEP process. This project shall be ongoing from FY 2006 through FY 2010, following external review and approval of funding.

Project Goals and Objectives: The *primary goal* is to collect annual and biennial measurements, report and evaluate system-wide relative changes in the morphology, volume and grain-size characteristics of fine-sediment deposits in aquatic and terrestrial settings of the main channel. These monitoring data will mostly be comprised of field measurements made using standard hydrographic and surveying methods within 35 previously monitored sand bars, as well as within twelve integrated monitoring reaches. Of particular concern are deposits within the first 240 miles downstream of the dam related to near-shore, terrestrial habitats, and recreational campsites, and areas where cultural resources occur. Habitats influenced by dam operations and fine-sediment storage include: aquatic near-shore habitats important to fish (backwaters and sandy shorelines that support vegetation), channel environments where benthic organisms occur and are affected by fine-sediment flux (cobble bars, debris fans and talus shorelines), terrestrial habitats that support riparian vegetation and associated fauna, terrestrial

substrates used by recreational backcountry visitors, and terrestrial substrates that support and preserve cultural resources (frequently inundated sand bars and up to the tops of pre-dam river terraces).

Secondary goals shall be to relate changes in fine-sediment storage to dam operations, and to the distribution and condition of physical habitats of the aquatic and terrestrial ecosystem related to biological and socio-cultural resources of concern. These physical resource data provide information needed to interpret changes in cultural, recreational and biological resources relative to annual operations of Glen Canyon Dam.

Specific monitoring objectives of the project include change detection data:

- For pre-dam river terraces needed to determine the ongoing stability or erosion of these relict fine-sediment deposits of the pre-dam river associated cultural resources (biennial measurements),
- For near-shore aquatic and terrestrial substrates and associated fauna related to biological and cultural resources (biennial measurements),
- On grain-size (relative texture) and abundance (relative volume) of fine-sediments available for use in restoring and preserving sediment-dependent resources through periodic flow manipulation (biennial measurements),
- Availability and quality of recreational campsites in critical reaches and system-wide (annual measurements),
- Sand bar volume and area above 25,000 cfs at 35 previously monitored deposits (annual measurements),
- On the system-wide, channel-bed distribution of fine- versus coarse-sediment substrates (biennial measurements).

MOs Addressed: This integrated long-term monitoring project shall provide data related to the fine-sediment management objectives associated with Goal #8, as listed within Appendix Two. Within twelve integrated reaches, annual-to-biennial surveys of fine-sediment deposits of the main channel shall provide information on the condition of both terrestrial and aquatic sand bar morphologies and grain-size characteristics, including return-current channels (backwaters) and riparian plant substrates. In addition, fine-grained terraces that are relicts of the pre-dam system shall be monitored to detect lateral erosion, and any trends will be evaluated relative to historical changes in terraces determined through current synthesis research. The study reaches were selected in a way that: 1) compliments efforts to track the fine-sediment mass balance (including many existing study sites from the EIS period), 2) overlaps with terrestrial biological-cultural-

recreational monitoring, and 3) coincides with aquatic study areas associated with native and non-native fishes. A system-wide subset of terrestrial sand bars will also be evaluated for recreational camping suitability at elevations above the 25,000 cfs stage.

Expected Products: Annual-to-biennial data on main channel topographic and grain-size changes of fine-sediment deposits that result from interactions between sediment supply and dam operations. Also required, shall be a system-wide, GIS-based map of the main channel documenting the distribution of channel-bed substrates, with specific emphasis on fine- versus coarse-sediment and bedrock. Annual progress reports based on change-detection data for fine-sediment deposits documenting relationships between the above physical data sets and related Colorado River ecosystem attributes. A final report on sand storage changes within study sites following year-5 monitoring shall be provided by the integrated study team. Emphasis shall be on relationships between fine-sediment distribution and near-shore aquatic and terrestrial habitats where vegetation and associated fauna, recreation and cultural resources are of management and scientific concern. Please see current Fact Sheets and publications on this project, available through the GCMRC web site.

Expected products from this project include:

- Semi-annual progress reports on status of the monitoring project, and annual reports describing achievement of goals (e.g., time series depicting changes in the volume, area and grain-size distributions of fine-sediment storage, changes in pre-dam terraces related to cultural preservation sites, or changes in recreation camping beach availability above the 25,000 cfs stage),
- Annual GIS data sets related to change detection analyses related to main channel storage of fine sediment that result from tributary events, and interactions with dam operations,
- Annual technical presentations at GCMRC Science Symposia or Technical Workgroup meetings on the project's progress and results,
- Annual color *Fact Sheets* that summarize long-term monitoring trends in fine-sediment storage through the main channel of the Colorado River ecosystem,
- Participation in conceptual modeling workshops and related planning meetings that are periodically convened by GCMRC program staff and other cooperators,
- Final report, including interpretive results derived from monitoring and all data

Recommended Approach/Methods: Fine-grained sediment storage data will be measured throughout integrated monitoring reaches on a biennial schedule using a combination of remote and ground-based topographic survey and sedimentology measurements that characterize changes in grain-size, morphology and storage volume changes in fine-sediment deposits at prescribed long-term monitoring sites. Although more frequent sand storage measurements might be warranted on the basis of fine-sediment dynamics, the current science budget can only support biennial reach-scale measurements. To maintain continuity with previous monitoring, 35 pre-existing sand bar monitoring sites above and below Phantom Ranch will be surveyed on an annual schedule above river stage, with special emphasis on volumetric and area changes above the 25,000 cfs stage.

Campsite areas will be included within monitoring reaches as a subset of deposits monitored, and may eventually include a sub-sample of as many as fifty campsite areas located within reaches designated as “critical.” Campsite assessments shall be conducted annually within critical reaches using a combination of new technologies (computer mapping tablets) and existing survey methods to document campable areas at elevations above 25,000 cfs. Campsites outside of critical reaches will be monitored on a biennial schedule.

A suite of channel-substrate mapping methods shall be used within integrated monitoring reaches on a biennial schedule in the spring season to map the distribution of fine versus coarse sediment and bedrock channel-bed substrates. However, the spatial and temporal need for these data is still being evaluated as part of the long-term monitoring plan for sediment and ecological resources.

Under contingency plans, additional measurements of fine-sediment storage, channel-bed substrates and grain-size characteristics shall be conducted using additional fiscal resources in the event of large-scale flow experiments (e.g., BHBF and SASF).

Status: This is an ongoing monitoring project that was originally approved and implemented through a competitive solicitation process in FY 2001.

External Project Awards: Management and Cooperative agreements were established with two groups within the USGS, and two universities to accomplish this monitoring during FY 2001 and 2002: 1) Water Resources Discipline, 2) Geologic

Discipline, 3) Northern Arizona University and 4) Utah State University; funded (combined) at approximately \$300,000.00 per year. Additional funds were expended internally by the GCMRC to support student-staff salaries, accomplish tasks related to supporting field data collection, laboratory analyses of sediment samples, and replacement and repair of field and laboratory equipment and instrumentation. Projected funding for the FY 2004, portion of this project is shown in the budget table below.

Project Accomplishments: During water years 2001 and 2002, the project has supplied the GCMRC monitoring program with sand bar deposit topography and grain-size data throughout the ecosystem, as well as annual data on changes in camping areas. The project has also been working toward completion of a decade-scale comparison (1990 to 2000) of changes in sand deposits within key reaches related to return-current channels (backwaters) and pre-dam river terrace deposits. New advances include methods for capturing very high-resolution data for channel-bed topography, bed substrates, as well as digital imagery of substrate grain-size distributions. This project is also producing digital ortho-photogrammetry data for sand bar area and volume at 35 pre-existing study sites. The purpose of this work is to extend the time series of those sites from 10 years (1991-2001) to 17 years (1984-2001). In addition, this project is also exploring new ways to use LIDAR data and ortho-rectified remote imagery to enhance the efficiency of change-detection mapping of sandy deposits.

Schedule: This ongoing, long-term monitoring program will enter its fourth year in FY 2004, and will be continued annually through at least FY 2005, under the existing work plan, through annual modification of the FY 2001 agreements. During FY 2005, this monitoring program's scope, methods and accomplishments shall be evaluated through an additional PEP-SEDS review. During the external review process, special focus will be placed on the level of integration achieved with biological, cultural and recreational resource management issues, as well as revised management objectives and information needs. The monitoring project shall be continued from FY 2006 through 2010, following the PEP review, and approval of funding.

Integrated Fine -Sediment Storage Monitoring Project Time Line 2001-2005:

	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
Project Solicitation Released, October 2000	Three New Agreements, in 2001	Renewed as Modification, Winter 2002	Renewed as Modification, Winter 2003	Renewed as Modification, Winter 2004	Renewed as Modification, Fall 2005
Integrated, Reach-Based Field Data Collection/Analysis (12 reaches), plus Selected Camping Areas & Sand bars	Planning for Reaches, plus Collect <u>Annual</u> Camp Areas & Sandbars	Collect <u>Biennial</u> Reach Data, plus <u>Annual</u> Camp Areas & Sandbars	Processing Reach Data, plus <u>Annual</u> Camp Areas & Sandbars	Collect <u>Biennial</u> Reach Data, plus <u>Annual</u> Camp Areas & Sandbars	Processing Reach Data, plus Collect <u>Annual</u> Camp Areas & Sandbars
Report and Data Delivery	Semiannual and Annual	Semiannual and Annual	Semiannual and Annual	Semiannual and Annual	Draft Final Reports
Project Technical Coordination, plus Review/Evaluation	Monthly to Annually, GCMRC	Monthly to Annually GCMRC	Monthly to Annually GCMRC	Monthly to Annually GCMRC	Externally Reviewed PEP & SA
Scheduled Project Progress and Completion Dates	Progress Report, by 12/31/01	Progress Report, by 12/31/02	Progress Report, by 12/31/03	Progress Report, by 12/31/04	Final Reports by June 30 2006

Budget: \$461,730 (Note: \$22,000 is redirected from Advanced Conceptual Modeling project completed in FY2003.)

FINE GRAINED SEDIMENT STORAGE					
Description		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)					
Physical Program Manager	0.10	8,700	8,900	8,500	9,300
Physical Resources Student	0.30			5,200	9,900
Biological Scientist		1,740	1,780	0	0
Ecologist		1,220	1,200	0	0
Cultural Program Manager	0.04	1,740	1,780	4,500	3,880
Cooperative Agreements					
Biology		30,000	31,000	32,000	33,000
Cultural		85,000	87,000	75,000	77,000
Physical		225,000	230,000	237,000	259,000
Technical Support Services					
Logistics		60,000	117,600	52,000	57,000
Survey (Surveyor)	0.10	12,450	12,900	8,200	8,900
GIS	0.05			4,000	3,750
TOTAL		425,850	492,160	426,400	461,730

Appropriations - Requested Funding	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Annual High-Elevation Measurements of Sand				15,000
Storage at NAU Sites				
TOTAL	0	0	0	15,000

Notes: (1) Reduced logistics support costs in the FY 2004 budget reflect reduced field activities of the “off year” associated with the project’s biennial sampling schedule within integrated reaches. (2) Managed flood releases in excess of power plant peaks shall be tied to additional monitoring under the project’s contingency plan. Managed flood flows in excess of 45,000 cfs, shall be of special interest to this monitoring program with respect to fine-sediment dynamics, since none have occurred since the time that the ROD has been in effect. Implementation of contingency plan for this monitoring project shall occur on the basis of funding availability.

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: C.1b. LONG -TERM MONITORING OF FINE-GRAINED SEDIMENT STORAGE THROUGHOUT THE MAIN CHANNEL - Recreational Component - Monitoring Camping Beaches

Rationale/Problem Statement: Fine-grained deposits (sand and finer) of the main channel constitute a major storage component of the Colorado River ecosystem's sediment budget. Glen Canyon Dam operations influence fine deposits in ways that affect aquatic and terrestrial habitats over both short and long periods. The emphasis of this long-term sediment monitoring project shall be to document system-wide changes in fine-grained deposits relative to dam operations and natural inputs, with emphasis on key storage settings within critical reaches.

Integration: Fine-sediment deposits along the main channel form many physical habitats for both terrestrial and aquatic organisms of the ecosystem; including ethno-botanical resources. They also comprise sources and sinks for nutrients, recreational campsites and settings for in-situ preservation of cultural resources. Information on the distribution and characteristics of these deposits must be measured in ways that can be related to dam operations. Further, the measurements must be made over spatial and temporal scales that allow fine-sediment related resources to be linked to changing conditions of the sediment budget.

General Project Description: This component of the long-term sediment monitoring studies recreational camping beaches to determine if and how they are affected by flow releases. These beaches provide needed locations for recreational enthusiasts within the river corridor. Various flow regimes may affect the distribution, size, and availability of beaches.

Project Goals and Objectives:

- Record and monitor beach conditions and changes at selected beach locations within narrow and wide reaches throughout the river corridor.
- Provide an annual assessment of beach changes or stability to the AMP stakeholders and the NPS.
- Provide recommendations on the sources of beach change or stability and methodologies for assessing and monitoring beaches

MOs Addressed: This project addresses recreational management objectives MO 9.3.

Expected Products:

- Data collection at specified beach locations on an annual basis
- Coordinate beach monitoring efforts with sandbar monitoring, river terraces and other sediment data
- Provide an annual report incorporating camping beaches within larger sediment storage reports.

Recommended Approach/Methods: Fine-grained sediment storage data will be measured throughout monitoring reaches upstream of Phantom Ranch annually using a combination of remote and ground-based topographic survey and sedimentology measurements that characterize changes in grain-size, morphology and storage volume changes in fine-sediment deposits at prescribed long-term monitoring sites. Existing monitoring reaches above and below Phantom Ranch will be surveyed on an annual schedule, with special emphasis on reaches where relations between physical habitat and endangered native fishes are of interest (second population of Humpback chub), or in years when changes in fine-grained sediment storage are influenced by flood flows.

Campsite areas will be included within monitoring reaches as a subset of deposits monitored, and may include a sub-sample located within reaches designated as “critical.” Campsite assessments shall be conducted annually within critical reaches using existing survey methods to document campable areas at elevations above 25,000 cfs. Campsites outside of critical reaches will be monitored on a biennial schedule. These data shall be related to stages up to at least 45,000 cfs, and possibly higher.

Status: This project was initiated in FY 2001 and is scheduled to continue through FY 2005, when it will be reassessed. The estimated cost for FY 2004 for the recreational component is \$75,000.

External Project Awards: The recreational component of this project has been awarded to Northern Arizona University, Department of Geology.

Project Accomplishments: Campsites are monitored on an annual basis through intensive field assessments. Annual reports are submitted providing an evaluation of the campsites.

Schedule: This is an on-going long-term monitoring project for the assessment of campsites. The final year of the project is FY 2005, when it will be reassessed.

Fall	Winter	Spring	Summer
Annual October monitoring trip	Data analysis	Data analysis & report write up	September report Delivery to AMP

Budget:

See project C-1a (sediment component) above for budget information.

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: C.2. INTEGRATED LONG-TERM MONITORING OF STREAM FLOW AND FINE-SEDIMENT TRANSPORT IN THE MAIN CHANNEL COLORADO, PARRIA AND LITTLE COLORADO RIVERS

Rationale/Problem Statement: Glen Canyon Dam operations, as prescribed by the Secretary's Record of Decision, and their relationship with downstream resources of management concern, are the primary focus of the ongoing Glen Canyon adaptive management program. It is therefore necessary that discharges from the dam be measured and reported, as well as data on suspended-sediment transport. Owing to the key role played by fine sediments throughout the ecosystem, it is also necessary to monitor key tributary stream flows and associated fine-sediment inputs that occur downstream from the dam. These combined data provide the basis for monitoring the ecosystem's mass balance of fine sediment relative to dam operations. Recent findings by USGS researchers on the relationships between ROD dam operations and fine-sediment dynamics of the ecosystem (please see *Current Knowledge* section for details) support increased efforts to monitor the monthly to seasonal flux of fine sediment into and out of the ecosystem.

Inflows from the Paria and Little Colorado Rivers are a major source of both inorganic and organic fine-sediments that support physical and biological habitats of the ecosystem. Therefore, field measurements of these inputs are required for tracking the system-wide fine-sediment and nutrient budgets. In addition, monitoring the export of fine-sediment out of the ecosystem is another vital component of the system-wide sediment and nutrient budgets related to estimating the residence time for inputs. Residence time and fate of nutrients and fine inorganic sediments is related to dam operations, and influences the stability and characteristics of physical habitats, as well as biological processes.

During FY 2004, new methods will continue to be tested for monitoring influx versus of efflux of nutrients, in addition to fine inorganic sediment. To achieve this objective, several automated pumping samplers are planned for installation at key sites within major and lesser tributaries, as well as at sites along the main channel of the Colorado River. In addition, the USGS has reactivated one gaging station on the Paria River within southern Utah. Telemetry stage/discharge data from this station will allow sediment scientists a better chance to anticipate the occurrence and timing of floods that reach Lees Ferry. This advance information on Paria River sand inputs will better ensure the collection of “event” samples on this key tributary, and may provide some early notice to dam managers about the timing of new sand inputs that enter the Colorado River ecosystem.

Monitoring stream flow and suspended-sediment transport: (1) allows managers to track the status of fine-sediment flux into and out of the ecosystem on a seasonal to annual basis; (2) provides data that allow development of a 1-dimensional model for routing fine sediment through the main channel related to tributary sediment inputs “events” that can dramatically influence Colorado River ecosystem resources in both aquatic and terrestrial habitats; (3) provides data that supports interpretation of other monitoring data on the availability and grain-size of fine-grained sediment stored within geomorphic environments of the main channel; and 4) provides an opportunity to begin tracking a mass balance for suspended and dissolved organic and inorganic constituents of the ecosystem’s nutrient budget.

Integration: Stream flow is the fundamental parameter linking dam operations with changing conditions of downstream resources. Main channel and tributary stream flows play an integral part in driving sediment transport and dynamics of the nutrient budget, and thus in relating dam operations to changes in downstream resources linked to the sediment budget. Stream flow also links with nutrient flux between Lake Powell, the Paria and Little Colorado River and hundreds of *lesser* tributaries downstream from the dam that input both organic and inorganic constituents. Data on stream flow, sediment transport and quality of water need to be documented consistently throughout the ecosystem so that trends in non-physical resources downstream of the dam can be linked back to dam operations, or to non-dam related factors.

General Project Description: This ongoing monitoring and research project represents the core of the long-term monitoring effort for fine-sediment, stream flow and downstream water quality resources. The project is intended to document: (1) discharges from Glen Canyon Dam at the existing Glen Canyon stream gage; (2) stream flows and fine-sediment inputs entering the Colorado River ecosystem from the Paria and Little Colorado Rivers at existing stream gages; (3) combined stream flows and fine-sediment transport along the main channel at the existing stream gages at Lees Ferry, upstream of the confluence with the Little Colorado River, Grand Canyon, and Diamond Creek (river miles -14, 0, 87, and 226, respectively); (4) evaluations of model-derived estimates of fine-sediment inputs from the Paria and Little Colorado Rivers with sediment-transport field measurements; (5) model-reach characteristics before and after major tributary floods and evaluate channel changes with respect to model variables and modeling assumptions associated with those variables; (6) “event” data for stream flow floods and associated fine-sediment inputs that occur in *lesser* but significant drainage areas in Glen and Marble Canyons; (7) quality of water data from the above sites that contribute to biological program needs, particularly those needed for development of a system-wide nutrient budget.

Project Goals and Objectives: The major emphasis of this project will be to document the flux of stream flow, fine-grained sediments and nutrients system-wide through an

existing network of USGS operated stream gages and numerical models developed for the gaged tributaries.

The *primary goal* is to document the flux of fine inorganic sediment into and out of the main channel of the ecosystem and relate this flux to data on annually collected system-wide storage of fine-sediment in the main channel. *Secondary goals* include improved understanding of stream flow and sediment-transport processes in gaged tributaries and along the main channel; continued data collection that supports flow and sediment model development and verification; and a consistent process for segregating sediment samples into their respective organic and inorganic components to support development of a nutrient budget-with an emphasis on Carbon and Phosphate. Both inorganic and organic components of the fine-sediment budget are known to influence organisms of the food base, as well as physical habitats of the aquatic and terrestrial ecosystem, such as aquatic near-shore habitats important to fish, terrestrial habitats that support riparian vegetation and associated fauna, terrestrial substrates used by recreational backcountry visitors, and terrestrial substrates that support and preserve cultural resources.

These physical resource data shall be related to changes in cultural, recreational and biological resources relative to annual operations of Glen Canyon Dam and fine-sediment inputs downstream of the dam.

Specific monitoring objectives of the project:

- Measurement of unit-value discharge and fine-sediment transport along the main channel Colorado River between Glen Canyon Dam and Diamond Creek, located at river miles –15 and 226, respectively,
- Measurement of unit-value discharge and fine-sediment transport of the Paria and Little Colorado Rivers, located at river miles 1 and 61, respectively,
- Characterize grain-size of channel-bed and transported fine sediments where discharge measurements are made, as well as at key intermediate locations,
- Monitor channel attributes of the Paria and Little Colorado Rivers within selected modeling reaches, and compare these data with assumptions associated with flow and sediment input model performance estimated for these tributaries,
- Evaluate and report on annual flux of fine sediment with respect to data for similar periods on status of channel-storage component of system-wide fine-sediment budget,
- Monitor and evaluate system-wide nutrient flux between Lake Powell, key tributaries and downstream reaches below Glen Canyon Dam.

MOs Addressed: This integrated physical resource monitoring project provides information needs related to management objectives lists specific MOs. Management objectives and information needs associated with long-term monitoring of dam operations, fine-grained sediment flux and stream flow throughout the main channel shall be obtained through this project by a combination of internal activities, as well as through a management agreement with the Water Resources Discipline (WRD). Additionally, key water quality parameters related to main channel, and gaged tributaries shall be obtained through the existing USGS stream gage network in support of biological management objectives and information needs.

Expected Products: Annual data reports on main channel and gaged tributary stream flows and sediment transport that reflect tributary inputs and interactions between those inputs and dam operations. These measurements will reflect two key elements of the fine-sediment and Carbon budgets-inputs, and export from the Colorado River ecosystem (as determined at the Diamond Creek and Grand Canyon gages, as well as at one location upstream of the Little Colorado River confluence). Annual data and interpretive report(s) on stream flow and sediment transport relationships between tributary inputs and the main channel of management and scientific concern. Of particular concern will be reports and presentations to the GCMRC and Science Advisors assessing the performance of geomorphically based flow and sediment models for the Paria and Little Colorado Rivers.

Stream flow will be measured and reported in 15-minute unit values, and posted along with daily mean values on the USGS web site. Suspended-sediment and bed-sediment, and water quality samples will be collected and analyzed throughout the monitoring period on a daily to weekly basis and reported annually through the USGS web site. Monitoring of tributary model reaches shall be conducted periodically as needed relative to flows that have potential for changing channel characteristics related to model parameters and assumptions.

Recommended Approach/Methods: Ongoing measurement of stream flow, water quality, suspended-sediment concentration and grain-size, and bed-sediment grain-size characteristics at five main channel locations downstream of Glen Canyon Dam, and on

established gages located on the Paria and Little Colorado Rivers. These measurements will be made using standard protocols established and maintained by USGS at similar monitoring sites nationwide. Analyses of sediment and water samples will be conducted by USGS personnel using standard methods at the GCMRC Sediment Laboratory, and other laboratories as needed for nutrient budget purposes.

Motorized trips will be conducted to maintain five existing main channel stream gage sites, and to deploy intensive sediment sampling teams at above sites on a seasonal basis. Under contingency plans, additional measurements of stream flow, suspended and bed sediment concentration and grain-size characteristics will occur in the event of large-scale flow experiments (e.g., BHBF and SASF).

Status: This is an ongoing monitoring project that was originally approved and implemented through a internally negotiated management agreements between the GCMRC and Water Resources and Geologic Disciplines of the USGS during FY 2001. Collection of suspended-sediment and water quality samples shall occur as a joint collaboration between the GCMRC and the WRD, as specified in the FY 2004 version of the management agreement.

External Project Awards: Management agreements were established with two non-GCMRC groups within the USGS to accomplish this monitoring effort during FY 2001 and 2002: 1) Water Resources Discipline and 2) Geologic Discipline; funded (combined) at about \$375,000.00 per year. Additional funds were expended internally by the GCMRC to accomplish tasks related to supporting field data collection, laboratory analyses of sediment samples, and replacement and repair of field and laboratory equipment and instrumentation. Projected funding for the FY 2004, portion of this project is shown in the budget table below.

Project Accomplishments: During water years 2001 through 2003, the project has supplied the GCMRC monitoring program with hourly unit values of stage, discharge, temperature, specific conductivity and suspended-sediment data related to operations from Glen Canyon Dam. In addition, during the first three years of this monitoring project, additional intensive sediment-transport monitoring protocols were evaluated for the main channel and several of its tributaries. These protocols support the minimum data collection requirements for estimating the monthly mass balance of fine sediment

throughout the ecosystem. Daily-to-weekly sediment data have been collected at both the Grand Canyon and Above Diamond Creek gages. Stream flow and water quality data are available through the USGS - WRD web site, while sediment data are available through the GCMRC's ftp site. Stream flow and sediment monitoring protocols have been improved for both the Paria and Little Colorado Rivers, and additional monitoring instrumentation has been installed within several "lesser" tributaries within Glen and Upper Marble Canyons. Internal planning between the GCMRC and the WRD occurred during FY 2002, to develop monitoring protocols for collection and analyses of water quality samples obtained from the main channel of the ecosystem and key tributaries.

New Initiatives to Improve Monitoring: Additional funding is requested for FY 2004, to enhance and improve the quantity and quality of fine-sediment transport data collected each month. Improvements in data collections are intended to reduce uncertainties in estimates of fine-sediment influx (tributaries) and efflux (main channel) tied to the system-wide mass balance. Preliminary FY 2002, evaluations of suspended-sediment data collected using *Laser In-Situ Scattering and Transmissometry* (LISST) technology indicates that such instruments have the potential to greatly improve estimates of the monthly mass of fine sediment exported from the ecosystem under ROD operations. Evaluation, and potential implementation, of the LISST technology is scheduled to continue through FY 2004. In addition, automated pumping samplers shall be installed and maintained in FY 2004, and beyond (pending available funds) at key sites throughout the ecosystem to further improve sand mass balance estimates. Finally, added "advance alert" instrumentation shall be installed and operated (pending availability of funds) in the upper Paria River drainage areas, so that dam operators may gain increased planning time for combining peak power-plant releases with significant fine-sediment inputs from this key tributary. Please see budget tables for additional details on the costs associated with these new initiatives.

Schedule: This long-term monitoring program will enter its fourth year in FY 2004, and will be continued annually through at least FY 2005, through an annually through modification of management agreements with the Water Resources and Geologic Disciplines of USGS. Status of the monitoring program methods, temporal and spatial

scale shall be evaluated through a PEP-SEDS approach during year 5; with special focus on the level of integration with biological resource management and information needs. This project shall be ongoing in FY 2006 through 2010, following a second PEP-SEDS review, and approval of funding.

Integrated Stream Flow and Sediment-Transport Monitoring Project Time Line
2001 - 2005:

	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
Project Conducted Internally Within USGS, on Basis of Management Objectives & IN's	Two New Management Agreements, Signed, 2001	Renewed as Modification of MA's, Fall 2001	Renewed as Modification of MA's, Fall 2002	Renewed as Modification of MA's, Fall 2003	Renewed as Modification of MA's, Fall 2004
Data Collection and Analyses for Fine - Sediment Mass Balance	Flow & SS Collected, Hourly to Weekly, w/ Ongoing Analysis	Flow & SS Collected, Hourly to Weekly w/ Ongoing Analysis	Flow & SS Collected, Hourly to Weekly w/ Ongoing Analysis	Flow & SS Collected, Hourly to Weekly w/ Ongoing Analysis	Flow & SS Collected, Hourly to Weekly w/ Ongoing Analysis
Report/Data Delivery	Quarterly to Semi-annual and Annual	Quarterly to Semi-annual and Annual	Quarterly to Semi-annual and Annual	Quarterly to Semi-annual and Annual	Preparation, Draft Final Reports
Project Technical Coordination and Review/Evaluation	Monthly to Annually by GCMRC	Monthly to Annually by GCMRC	Monthly to Annually by GCMRC	Monthly to Annually by GCMRC	Externally Reviewed by PEP & SA's
Schedule for Project Progress and Completion	Annual Progress Report	Annual Progress Report	Annual Progress Report	Annual Progress Report	Final Reports by June 30, 2006

Budget: \$609,420

STREAMFLOW & FINE-GRAINED SEDIMENT					
DESCRIPTION		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)					
Physical Program Manager	0.34	8,700	8,900	21,250	31,620
Physical Research Student	0.60	0	11,900	15,600	19,800
Biology Program Manager		1,740	1,780	0	0
Ecologist		1,220	1,200	0	0
Cultural Program Manager		1,740	1,780	0	0
Contracts					
Biology		70,000	72,000	74,000	76,000
Physical		400,000	408,000	420,000	433,000
Technical Support Services					
Logistics		50,000	98,000	44,000	49,000
Survey		4,150	4,300	0	0
TOTAL		537,550	607,860	574,850	609,420

Appropriations - Requested Funding	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Contracts				
One-Year Evaluation of In-Situ Continuous			80,000	40,000
Monitoring of Suspended-Sediment Transport				
Installation of Automated Pump Samplers			50,000	25,000
Advance Warning for Paria River Sediment Inputs			30,000	30,000
TOTAL		0	160,000	95,000

Note: (1) Managed flood releases in excess of power plant peaks shall be tied to additional monitoring under the project's contingency plan. Managed flood flows in excess of 45,000 cfs shall be of special interest to this monitoring program with respect to fine-sediment dynamics, since none have occurred since the time that the ROD has been in effect. Implementation of contingency plan for this monitoring project shall occur on the basis of funding availability.

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: C.3. INTEGRATED LONG-TERM MONITORING OF COARSE-GRAINED SEDIMENT INPUTS, STORAGE AND IMPACTS TO PHYSICAL HABITATS

Rationale/Problem Statement: Coarse-grained sediment deposits (composed of particles larger than sand-sized) are influenced by dam operations, and are also linked to biological, physical and recreational resources. Specifically, coarse-sediment deposits containing boulders form debris-fans that are stable features of the main channel. Debris fans impinge on the flow of the channel at hundreds of locations, and thus control stream flow and fine-sediment deposition and structure in the Colorado River ecosystem. Dam operations influence continued inputs of coarse-grained sediment from tributaries in unique ways that modify upper pool and downstream eddy environments where fine sediments are stored. Coarse-grained sediment inputs also include organic particles, such as woody matter that add to the ecosystem's Carbon budget.

With respect to biological resources, coarse sediments form the substrates needed by benthic organisms associated with the food base, as well as spawning habitats for fish. Coarse-sediment deposits contribute to the formation and maintenance of hundreds of rapids that attract whitewater recreation enthusiasts; supporting a tourism industry that contributes substantially to the regional economy. Recent research has also documented that recreational camping areas are periodically degraded through erosion and (or) burial when tributary debris flows deposit coarse sediments along the main channel of the ecosystem (Melis et al., 1994). Results from the 1996 Beach/Habitat-Building Test, indicate that dam operations can be used to manage new coarse-sediment deposits through river reworking during controlled floods (Webb et al., 1999).

Monitoring tributary debris-flow impacts and resulting coarse-sediment deposits, with respect to operations of Glen Canyon Dam, provides data on: (1) changing physical-habitat conditions related to coarse sediment that influence biological resources (such as the food base and spawning habitats for fish) and are of interest to scientists conducting related monitoring projects; (2) changing navigational conditions of whitewater rapids; (3) degradation of camping areas owing to erosion and (or) burial by coarse debris; (4) system-wide influences of flow regulation on the geomorphology of the main channel with respect to potential distribution and storage of fine sediment deposits.

Integration: Coarse sediments of the main channel provide both substrates and a geomorphic framework that makes the Colorado River in Grand Canyon unique. Coarse lag deposits of the channel such as cobble bars and debris fans are physical habitats that support the benthic organisms of the food base, and support spawning and rearing habitats. Consistent measurements of changes in coarse-grain sediment storage are essential to linking dam operations to food base trends and patterns of fish behavior related to physical habitat use. In addition, this integrated project team shall provide sediment input data from hundreds of contributing tributary drainage areas. Basic information on total drainage area between the dam and Lake Mead is one basis for estimating contributions of organic Carbon, such as woody matter, as well as dissolved Carbon and other nutrients carried into the ecosystem along with fine sediments. Basic information derived from this project about the timing and frequency of tributary spates is intended to support efforts to expand the program's downstream water quality protocols, as well as further support conceptual modeling efforts.

General Project Description: Monitoring Glen Canyon Dam operations and their interactions with coarse-grained sediment deposits that structure the geomorphic framework of the Colorado River ecosystem. Specifically, interactions between coarse-sediment deposits introduced to the main channel by tributary debris flows and Glen Canyon Dam operations, relative to system-wide distributions of aquatic and terrestrial habitats. This sediment monitoring activity consists mainly of change detection with respect to coarse-sediment inputs and channel features that support physical habitats, such as debris fans, cobble bars, and channel-bed topography and distribution of channel-bed coarse-sediment substrates.

Project Goals and Objectives: The *primary goal* is to annually document and evaluate coarse-sediment inputs from tributary debris flows and floods. *Secondary goals* include evaluating annual coarse-sediment inputs to: local and system-wide changes in aquatic and terrestrial physical habitats, storage settings for fine-sediment deposits, impacts to campsites caused by debris-flow deposits, changes to navigational characteristics of rapids, etc.

Specific monitoring objectives of the project include change detection:

- Distribution and abundance of coarse substrates associated with biological habitats,
- Quality of recreational campsites and navigational conditions in rapids,
- For conditions and potential for fine-sediment storage in pools and rapids.

MOs Addressed: This integrated long-term monitoring project provides data related to management objectives 8.1, 8.2, 8.3, 8.4, 8.5, and 8.6. Information shall be provided on changes in the navigational characteristics of rapids, degradation of terrestrial sand bars, enhancement of sand-storage potential within upper pools and recirculation zones (eddies), distribution of cobble bars, and other aspects of physical habitat characteristics related to channel geomorphology.

Expected Products: Annual data on coarse-sediment inputs to main channel that result from tributary events, and interactions between coarse-sediment storage and dam operations. Annual progress report(s) that include information on ecological linkages between the above data sets and related Colorado River ecosystem resources. Progress reports shall also include information about changing physical-habitat conditions relating to biological, recreational resources and main-channel fine-sediment storage and mass balance.

Expected products from this project include:

- Semi-annual progress reports on status of project, and annual reports describing achievement of goals (for example, incorporation of historical data into conceptual sub-model for geomorphic framework during year one),
- Annual data on coarse-sediment inputs to main channel that result from tributary events, and interactions between coarse-sediment storage and dam operations,
- Periodic interpretive reports on progress of the monitoring project, as well as collaborative efforts with GCMRC conceptual modeling group(s) toward simulating ecological linkages between the above data sets and related Colorado River ecosystem resources, including changing conditions of biological habitats, recreational resources and main-channel fine-sediment storage,
- Annual GIS data sets related to change detection analyses related to inputs and related impacts of coarse-sediment that result from tributary events, and interactions with dam operations,
- Annual technical presentations at GCMRC Science Symposia or Technical Workgroup meetings on the project's progress and results,

- Annual color *Fact Sheets* that summarize long-term monitoring trends in fine-sediment storage through the main channel of the Colorado River ecosystem,
- Participation in conceptual modeling workshops and related planning meetings that are periodically convened by GCMRC program staff and other cooperators.

Recommended Approach/Methods: A combination of remotely and field-based survey measurements documenting annual impacts from tributary debris flows and floods on the texture and topography of debris fans of the main channel, substrates of the terrestrial and aquatic habitats, and characteristics of rapids and campsites. These data shall be used in combination with annual channel-substrate mapping data collected as part of the long-term monitoring of fine-sediment storage to assess the magnitude of pre- versus post-tributary event impacts.

Status: This is an ongoing monitoring project that was originally approved and implemented through a competitive solicitation process in FY 2001.

External Project Awards: A new management agreement was established with one group within the USGS to accomplish this monitoring during FY 2001 and 2002: 1) Water Resources Discipline; funded at approximately \$70,000.00 per year. Additional funds were expended internally by the GCMRC to support student-staff salaries, accomplish tasks related to supporting field data collection, laboratory analyses of sediment samples, and replacement and repair of field and laboratory equipment and instrumentation. Projected funding for the FY 2004, portion of this project is shown in the budget table below.

Project Accomplishments: During water years 2001 and 2002, the project has supplied the GCMRC monitoring program with new information of debris-flow impacts that occurred at several sites throughout the ecosystem during 1999 through 2001. In addition, two USGS color *Fact Sheets* and one USGS *Water Resources Research Investigation Report* (Webb et al., 2001) were published during FY 2001, that describe the protocols of this long-term monitoring project, as well as recent findings on debris-flow impacts, and estimates of total sediment contributions annually from all 768 lesser tributaries.

Schedule: This long-term monitoring program will be continued into its fourth year in FY 2004, and will be continued annually through at least FY 2005 through an annually renewal of the management agreement with the WRD. Status of the monitoring program methods, temporal and spatial scale shall be evaluated through a PEP-SEDS approach during years 4-5; with special focus on the level of integration with biological resource management and information needs. This project shall be ongoing in FY 2006 through 2010, following the next PEP-SEDS, and approval of funding.

Integrated Coarse-Sediment Monitoring of Inputs and Impacts Project Time

Line 2001 - 2005:

	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005
Competitive Solicitation Released, October 2000	Management Agreement, Spring 2001	Modification of MA, Fall 2001	Modification of MA, Fall 2002	Modification of MA, Fall 2003	Modification of MA, Fall 2004
Schedule for Data Collection and Analysis	Annual, Fall/Winter '01-'02	Annual, Fall/Winter '02-'03	Annual, Fall/Winter '03-'04	Annual, Fall/Winter '04-'05	Annual, Fall/Winter '05-'06
Report/Data Delivery	Annually, 12/31/01	Annually, 12/31/02	Annually, 12/31/003	Annually, 12/31/04	Draft Final Reports by 12/31/05
Project Technical Coordination, Review/Evaluation	Annually, GCMRC & SA's	Annually, GCMRC & SA's	Annually, GCMRC & SA's	Annually, GCMRC & SA's	Externally Reviewed by PEP-SA
Project Completion Schedule	Progress Report 12/31/01	Progress Report 12/31/02	Progress Report 12/31/03	Progress Report 12/31/04	Final Report, 06/30/06

Budget: \$145,275

COARSE-GRAINED SEDIMENT INPUTS					
Description		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)					
Physical Program Manager	0.100	8,700	8,900	8,500	9,300
Biology Program Manager		1,740	1,780	0	0
Ecologist		1,220	1,200	0	0
Cultural Program Manager		1,740	1,780	0	0
Physical Research Student	0.050			1,300	1,650
Contracts					
Physical		75,000	77,000	79,000	81,000
Technical Support Services					
Logistics		18,000	35,300	43,000	47,000
Survey	0.050	4,150	4,300	4,100	4,450
GIS	0.025			2,000	1,875
TOTAL		110,550	130,260	137,900⁽¹⁾	145,275

Note: (1) Managed flood releases in excess of power plant peaks shall be tied to additional monitoring under the project's contingency plan. Managed flood flows in excess of 45,000 cfs shall be of special interest to this monitoring program since none have occurred since the time that the ROD has been in effect. Implementation of contingency plan for this monitoring project shall occur on the basis of funding availability.

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: C.4.A. INTEGRATED STREAM FLOW AND SUSPENDED-SEDIMENT TRANSPORT MODELING WITHIN THE COLORADO RIVER ECOSYSTEM (An Ongoing Two-Part Research Project)

Part A: *MODELING REACH-AVERAGED SAND BAR EVOLUTION IN RESPONSE TO A RANGE OF DISCHARGE AND SEDIMENT CONDITIONS ALONG THE MAIN CHANNEL*

Note: Originally proposed as two separate research efforts in the FY 2001 annual plan, these two modeling projects described below have been combined into one effort and initiated in FY 2002. The main reasons for combining the two projects was to promote scientific integration in the models development, as well as cost efficiency among the two projects, as they are intimately related to one another. The start date of this research project was delayed owing to a need by the GCMRC to seek increased competition during the solicitation process.

Rationale/Problem Statement: One useful method that has been used to screen options for managing fine-grained sediment deposits along the main channel has been development of a conceptual model that includes flow routing and sedimentation sub-routines. Unfortunately, the existing model lacks the capability to predict sand bar deposition and erosion locally at sites where 3-D bar morphology and process-rate information is needed (fate of backwater habitats, for example). By selecting representative sub-reaches in which process-based sediment-transport and stream flow modeling can be developed, estimates of sand bar responses can be predicted in ways that allow for 3-D bar morphologies to be better anticipated under changing flow and sediment supply conditions.

Predicting sand bar size and morphology is critical for anticipating how sand bars supporting physical habitats will respond over short and long periods to a range of sediment supply conditions and experimental dam operations, such as the current treatment. This modeling capability also allows for large-scale flow experiments, especially those intended for sand bar restoration, to be evaluated in advance of conducting field tests. Screening of large-scale experiments through preliminary modeling is one way to assess and minimize risks associated with alternative flood-flows, such as BHBFs of variable duration and floods in excess of 45,000 cfs under varied sediment supply conditions. In addition, sand bar simulations allow managers and scientists opportunities to better design flood experiments related to key hypotheses that need to be addressed, such as short and longer-term impacts to the system's fine-sediment budget, distribution and characteristics of camping beaches, abundance and availability of backwater habitats, and potential for fine-sediment deposition along river terraces containing cultural resources.

Integration: Sand bar distribution, size and morphology are related to habitat types thought to be important to biological organisms of the ecosystem, such as early life stages of the Humpback chub. Dam operations affect not only the fine-sediment budget of the system, but also the individual characteristics of sand bars that support habitat types, such as backwaters. In addition, sand bar characteristics also affect recreational campsites and settings where cultural resources are preserved. As a result, being able to predict how the range of dam operations and sediment conditions relate to sand bar abundance and

morphologies can help promote integrated understanding of how physical and non-physical resources are related to dam releases.

General Project Description (Part A): Development of a sediment-transport model capable of predicting 3-dimensional sand bar evolution under a range of dam operations and sediment supply conditions in selected geomorphic reaches of the main channel. The model development shall be conducted in a way that results in predictions of reach-averaged sand bar responses within geomorphic reaches identified by GCMRC and Ecometric Research, Inc., in advance of the project (FY 2000 activity). The model will also be able to simulate changing bar conditions at specific sites of concern, provided that high-resolution channel geometry is available for the reach or site of interest.

Part A Project Goals and Objectives: The *primary goal* is to advance the understanding of sediment and flow processes along the main channel, while developing reach-averaged estimates of sand bar deposition and erosion under varied sediment supply conditions and dam operations up to 100,000 cfs. These estimates shall be based on selected portions of individual geomorphic reaches defined on the basis of average channel attributes and (or) proximity to points of major sediment inputs.

Secondary goals are: to produce data on estimated exchanges of fine-sediment transfer between eddies and the main channel for use in development of a 1-dimensional sand-transport model for routing fine sediment inputs through the main channel to Upper Lake Mead; to evaluate evolution of specific sand bar types related to backwaters and other physical habitats; to better estimate sand bar building flows related to distribution of camping areas, and to assess sand-bar deposition and erosion potential along pre-dam terraces where arroyo development threatens *in-situ* preservation of cultural resources. Because all flood flows must be routed through the relatively sediment-depleted Glen Canyon reach, it is crucial to conduct simulations to determine whether such flows are likely to erode pre-dam river terraces.

MOs Addressed: This integrated physical resource research project shall provide information related to predicting influences of dam operations on fine sediment and related resources as described in management objectives 8.1, 8.2, 8.3, 8.4, 8.5, and 8.6.

This research project shall provide: (1) greater understanding of flow and depositional processes related to sand bar evolution; (2) predictive insight into the fate of individual sand bar types and site-specific morphologies under a range of hypothetical conditions; and (3) sand-storage exchange data between eddies and the main channel within key reaches where 1-dimensional fine-sediment export predictions are needed.

Expected Products: Numerical model code and documentation on model development and use within study reaches of the main channel. Model output data on flow and sediment-transport simulations for a range of conditions as specified by the GCMRC. Interpretive report(s) on model theory and assumptions related to sediment storage changes along geomorphic reaches related to dam operations and fine-sediment flux.

Recommended Approach/Methods: Limited development and verification of similar modeling capability has been previously undertaken by the U.S. Geological Survey, for the reach between river mile 61 and 72 below Glen Canyon Dam. Results of these activities indicate good correspondence with documented floods in 1993 and 1996 that have resulted in bar building in this reach. Methods similar to these are currently being used in the same reach to support information needs related to the cultural resources program. It is assumed that such methods will likely be successful when applied to other geomorphic reaches throughout the ecosystem.

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: C.4.B. INTEGRATED STREAM FLOW AND SUSPENDED-SEDIMENT TRANSPORT MODELING WITHIN THE COLORADO RIVER ECOSYSTEM (*Cont.*)

Part B: *DEVELOPMENT OF A ONE-DIMENSIONAL FINE SEDIMENT-ROUTING MODEL ALONG THE MAIN CHANNEL*

Rationale/Problem Statement: At present, the instability of bed-storage grain-size distributions and related sediment-transport rating curves for measurement sites on the main channel (Lees Ferry, above confluence with Little Colorado River, Grand Canyon, and above Diamond Creek) make it impossible to estimate changes in the ecosystem's fine-sediment budget over time frames of interest to managers (hours to seasons). To

document changes in the storage of fine sediment in critical reaches, the current approach is to make relatively intensive field measurements for suspended-sediment transport. Such measurements are difficult to obtain for extended periods, costly to analyze, and are often associated with errors large enough that long-term sediment budgeting has little meaning. Development of a fine-sediment routing model that can track the fate of tributary inputs over hours to weeks can provide rapid evaluation of short-term changes in the system-wide flux of fine sediment needed to evaluate the influence of dam operations.

Integration: The ability to accurately estimate the export of fine sediment from the ecosystem following tributary floods is vital for predicting the potential for restoration of sediment-dependent resources through controlled floods. A major premise of the management program is that downstream resources may be preserved and sustained when a positive fine-sediment budget is maintained—one where sand supplies are available for manipulation through controlled floods. Sediment routing models allow for evaluations on how effective current dam operations are at maintaining a positive supply of stored fines in the main channel. This information is another source of information that can be used to relate non-physical resources back to dam operations.

General Project Description (Part B): A research program to develop an efficient numerical method for evaluating the influence of dam operations on tributary sediment inputs (sand and silt/clay) and the related fine-sediment budget. A numerical method of routing fine-sediment through the ecosystem is needed to track the fate of channel-stored sediment over short periods following tributary floods from the Paria and Little Colorado Rivers. This capability is also needed to make advance estimates of fine-sediment export from the ecosystem that result from planned or unplanned flood flows, as well as to simulate impacts of alternative dam operations. Because the grain-size distribution of channel-stored fine sediments directly impacts transport rates, this model will focus on tracking sediment loads in 1-dimension (tied to existing flow-routing model) for several size classes of sand, as well as silt and clay.

Part B Project Goals and Objectives: The *primary goal* is to obtain a 1-dimensional sediment routing model that links stream flow to suspended transport of fine sediment between, at a minimum, Glen Canyon Dam and the Grand Canyon stream gage near Phantom Ranch. *Secondary goals* include improved understanding of relationships between suspended-sediment transport and grain-size evolution of fines stored on the channel bed; improved ability to track fine-sediment budget within critical reaches for periods of weeks to months following gaged tributary floods; improved estimates of the residence time for storage of fine inputs in main channel eddies and pools relative to ROD dam operations.

MOs Addressed: This sediment-transport research project provides information needs related to predictions about how dam operations influence fine sediment and related resources, as described in management objectives 8.1, 8.2, 8.3, 8.4, 8.5, and 8.6. Successful development of this model and predictive capability has the potential for allowing managers to more quickly assess the system-wide influences of dam operations on fine-sediment inputs from gaged tributaries, while reducing the need for intensive field measurements and delays caused by laboratory analyses of sediment-transport samples.

Expected Products: Numerical model code and documentation on 1-D routing model development and use within the main channel below Glen Canyon Dam. Model output data on flow and sediment-transport simulations. Interpretive report(s) on model theory, linkages with results of 3-D eddy and sand bar simulations, and descriptions of the key model assumptions related to numerical estimation of fine-sediment flux along critical reaches related to dam operations and gaged tributary fine-sediment flux.

Recommended Approach/Methods: Conceptually, this sediment routing model shall combine the existing stream flow routing model (USGS) with results from 3-D sand bar evolution simulations, as well as existing reach-averaged channel geometry data, sediment-transport theory, and ongoing sediment-transport and stream flow monitoring data collected as part of core long-term monitoring of stream flow and sediment. Input data for model simulations will include unit-value discharge data from Glen Canyon Dam

and associated downstream gage network site, fine-sediment input data from the Paria and Little Colorado Rivers (existing flow-based sediment models), and estimated antecedent conditions of grain size for main channel bed storage.

The model's initial development will be followed by an intensive verification period in which stream flow, suspended-sediment concentration and grain size, and bed grain-size distribution data (above the confluence of the Little Colorado River and Grand Canyon gages) will be compared with model simulation outputs. The length of this required verification period will be dependent on the desired range of dam operations for which the model is intended to be used, and level of tributary flood activity that occurs following model development.

Status: An ongoing research project that was originally approved and implemented through a competitive solicitation process during FY 2002.

External Project Awards: Management and Cooperative agreements are scheduled to be established (pending final approval) with three groups, the USGS and two universities, to initiate this research during FY 2002-03: 1) Water Resources Discipline, 2) The Johns Hopkins University and 3) Utah State University; funded (combined) at approximately \$205,000 per year. Additional funds were expended internally by the GCMRC to support student-staff salaries, accomplish tasks related to supporting field data collection, laboratory analyses of sediment samples, and replacement and repair of field and laboratory equipment and instrumentation. Projected funding for the FY 2004, portion of this project is shown in the budget table contained in the following section.

Project Accomplishments: In the first two years of the project technical coordination meetings were held between the research team and the GCMRC. In addition, initial reaches were identified for model simulation, full-channel geometry data sets were assembled, geomorphic reaches were identified, and plans were made for conducting flume experiments at The University of Minnesota.

Part B Schedule: This research was initiated in FY 2002, through release of a competitive solicitation and will likely continue as a research effort through at FY 2004. The post-development verification may last an additional period of several years, but will

be supported through collection of ongoing stream flow and sediment-transport data at main channel gage sites. Emphasis for development of sediment routing prediction will be on critical upstream reaches where fine-sediments and related physical habitats are of most interest - Glen Canyon Dam to river mile 87 (Grand Canyon gage). Ultimately, the point at which sediment export is simulated may extend down to Diamond Creek. This project shall be supported through long-term monitoring program for stream flow and sediment transport (USGS, Arizona District). Additional sediment-transport data needs within Lower Marble Canyon for this project resulted in an expansion of long-term monitoring in FY 2002, under elements of project C.2. Eventually, the successful development of this sediment routing model may reduce the need for intensive suspended-sediment sampling of the main channel that is currently required to track the fine-sediment flux following large floods on the Paria and Little Colorado Rivers.

Integrated Sand Bar Evolution and Fine-Sediment Routing Modeling Project
Time Line 2002 - 2004:

	2002	2003	2004	2005
RFP Development/Release (April 2001)	Award of Agreements in Fall 2001	Initial Funding is Ongoing	Modified in Fall 2003	Model Development Completed
Data Collection/Analysis	Annually	Annually	Annually	Finalizing GUI's
Report/Data Delivery	Annually by December 31	Annually by December 31	Draft Reports by December 31	Revising Final Reports
Project Review/Evaluation	Annually by GCMRC & SA's	Annually by GCMRC & SA's	Annually by GCMRC & SA's	Externally Reviewed by PEP and SA's
Schedule for Project Completion	Progress Report 12/02	Progress Report 12/03	Progress Report 12/04	Finalize Reports by 12/05

Budget: \$256,375 (Note: \$10,000 is redirected from Advanced Conceptual Modeling project completed in FY2003.)

SEDIMENT TRANSPORT MODELING					
Description		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)					
Physical Scientist	0.150	8,700	8,900	8,500	13,950
Biology Program Manager		1,740	1,780	0	0
Biologist - Terrestrial		3,050	3,000	0	0
Cultural Program Manager		1,740	1,780	0	0
Physical Research Student	0.050			1,300	1,650
Contracts					
Cultural		25,000	26000	17000	18,000
Physical		175,000	179000	184000	200,000
Technical Support Services					
Logistics		36,000	70600	10000	12,000
Survey (Surveyor)	0.100	16,600	17,200	8,200	8,900
GIS	0.025			2,000	1,875
TOTAL		267,830	308,260	231,000	256,375

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: C.5. DEVELOPMENT OF A COLORADO RIVER ECOSYSTEM CONTROL NETWORK

Rationale/Problem Statement: Currently, about half of the CRE has geographic control that has met the needs of near and long-term monitoring and research plan. However, the existing control network requires the coordinates to be upgraded to the NGS rim control standard as well as set control in the remainder of the CRE. Upgraded survey control is required throughout the CRE to fully implement the monitoring and research plan.

Integration: Accurate spatial positioning of scientific data facilitates integration across resource areas by providing common geographic framework to store and analyze data. Many resource monitoring programs depend upon changes in the spatial distribution of resources as the basis of their monitoring strategy. Spatial analysis tools such as a GIS depend upon accurate geo-referencing of data to provide meaningful analysis. Without geographic control, geo-referencing of resource data and subsequent spatial analysis is impractical.

General Project Description: GCMRC researchers and contractors requiring data collection in the Colorado River Ecosystem (CRE) need geographic control to spatially position their data. Geographic control is the infrastructure to any mapping product. Public Land Survey Township and Range polygons, digital elevation models (DEM), or orthophotos are common types of geographic control. However, the most common reference to control pertains to survey control points that consists of well-defined and monumented location within the study areas. Survey control points typically represent the highest accuracy possible given the available technology. GPS or conventional survey technology is generally used to establish control points.

Project Goals and Objectives: The objective of this project is to develop a high-precision control network throughout the CRE. Control monuments will be established at a line-of-sight interval depending upon terrain.

MOs Addressed: The survey control network is fundamental to spatially positioning all scientific data collected as part of the GCDAMP. This project supports MOs identified in all integrated terrestrial and aquatic ecosystem activities.

Expected Products: The products of the CRE control network project will be:

- A network of survey control points established at line-of-sight intervals in the CRE from the GCD to the headwaters of Lake Mead.
- A report describing the methods, its construction, and control identifiers and locations.
- An index map showing the location of control points using the 2000 orthophotography as a backdrop.

Recommended Approach/Methods: Control points will be established using two industry standard survey methods, GPS and conventional survey practices. In the CRE, conventional survey practices means the use of a total station and one or more survey targets. Conventional traverse control involves starting at a known reference point, then setting a series of line-of-sight points and closing out at the point of beginning or another known reference point. Conventional survey methods will always be required to fill-in where satellite visibility is too obstructive for GPS. Conventional methods are used for all types of location surveys including topography and site location.

GPS technology will be used to set accurate control as well as a basis for remote sensing and ground topography. GPS is utilized to establish high order control points in the Canyon. This requires that a receiver or receivers be placed at known control points on the rim or in the canyon. Then additional receivers are used to set new points.

PEP Recommendations: The preliminary physical science PEP conducted in the summer of 1998 has recommended the continued development of a control network in their list of action items. In addition, all cultural, biological, physical, and remote sensing PEP's recommended scientific activities that require a control network throughout the canyon.

Status: Ongoing. Originally approved and implemented in FY 2000.

External Project Awards: None.

Project Accomplishments:

- Collected geodetic GPS (Global Positioning System) control data to upgrade river corridor control to NGS (National Geodetic Survey) rim control standards. Areas of survey work include: RM 30-55, 60-65, and 120-130 and long-term monitoring reaches.
- Established new NGS rim control standards on two new strategic rim control points during an NGS co-observation. These points include Eminence Break and Desert View.
- Control trip in August 2001. Collected geodetic GPS control data to upgrade river corridor control to NGS rim control standards. Areas of survey work include all of the LSSF (Low Steady Summer Flows) control points used so that they may be adjusted and used for comparison of remotely sensed data.

Schedule: The CRE control network schedule has been modified to reflect changes in the long term monitoring sites of the biological, cultural, and physical resource programs to be implemented in 2002.

Project Timeline 2000 - 2004

	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004
RM 72-90 plus select points in GIS areas	January-December				
RM -15-72 less select points in GIS areas		January-December			
RM 93-99, 120-123, 133-138, 143-145, 179-181, 207-210, 225-230 and 273-276 (old GIS sites)			January-December		
RM 99-120, 138-143 and 145-179				January-December	
RM 181-207 and 210-225					January-December
Completed					December

Budget: \$86,640

CONTROL NETWORK		New in		
Description		FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Technical Support Services				
Logistics			49,000	54,000
Surveyor	0.16	6,880	13,120	14,240
Surveying Technician	0.40	11,400	23,600	18,400
GIS				
TOTAL		18,280	85,720	86,640

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: C.6. DEVELOPMENT OF COLORADO RIVER ECOSYSTEM HYDROGRAPHIC MAPPING PROGRAM

Rationale/Problem Statement: Hydrographic mapping is the best method currently available to measure sub-aqueous topography.

Integration: Hydrographic technology is used in the Grand Canyon primarily to measure changes in the river channel. The primary changes that occur are due to the movement of sediment. These changes are monitored by hydro-acoustic measurements

that are accurately positioned over the course of the river channel. The hydrographic data collection method is designed to develop required monitoring and research products such as topographic maps, digital terrain models, sediment aggregation and degradation, hydrologic stage discharge modeling, and cross-section analysis. These products support the following projects: system wide channel mapping, fine-grained sediment storage, coarse-grained sediment, streamflow and fine-grained sediment transport, modeling reach-averaged sand bar evolution, and aquatic bio-monitoring.

General Project Description: The hydrographic mapping program facilitates all monitoring efforts requiring sub-aqueous measurements. The two areas of hydrographic mapping consist of an ongoing system-wide channel map and a repeatable reach monitoring for annual change detection.

Project Goals and Objectives: The objective of the project is to develop:

- Complete mapping sections of river between GCD and Phantom Ranch in 2003.
- Monitor approximately 30 miles of river channel annually for repeatable change detection of the river channel.

MOs Addressed: Hydrographic channel mapping addresses MOs associated with the Physical Science Program's Sand Storage Change Detection Monitoring and Channel Modeling project.

Expected Products: The products of the hydrographic channel-mapping project will be:

- A complete hydrographic channel map of the CR to Phantom Ranch at a resolution that would allow a contour interval of a quarter-meter without interpolation in 2002.
- A DEM of the CR channel bottom from the GCD to Phantom Ranch in 2002.
- A report describing the hydrographic mapping and data processing methods used in the map and DEM production.

Products will conform to GCMRC data standards and be integrated with terrestrial base maps produced as part of the terrestrial mapping project (i.e., the LIDAR mapping). The combined terrestrial and hydrographic maps and DEMs will provide the three-dimensional canyon geometry required for accurate change detection.

Recommended Approach: The multibeam approach will be used for most of the data collection because of its higher resolution and productivity. Multibeam technology is the only method available to accomplish the objectives within the projected time frame.

Status: Ongoing. Originally approved and implemented in FY 2000.

External Project Awards: None.

Project Accomplishments: Completed 30 miles of hydrographic channel mapping of the CRE in 2001. It is anticipated that an additional 20 mile of channel mapping will be completed in 2002 and 40 miles in 2003.

Schedule: The hydrographic channel mapping schedule of the CRE has been modified to reflect changes in the long term monitoring sites of the biological, cultural, and physical resource programs to be implemented in 2002.

Project Timeline 2000 - 2004

	2000	2001	2002		2004
RM 1-3, 7.5-8, 8.5-12, 16, 22, 29-31, 42-45, 60-65 and 68	January-December				
RM 31-42 and 45-60		January-December			
RM -2.2 – 0.0, 1.1-2.8, 3-7, 21.9-23.6, 29.4-32, 42.5-45.4, 54.4, 56.1, 63.3-66.2, 68-75, 86.4-87.9, 87-90, 119.1-123, 207.3-208.9, and 224.3-225			January-December		
RM 99-120, 138-143, 145-160 and 162-165				January-December	
RM 181-207, 210-225					January-December

Budget: \$125,900

CHANNEL MAPPING Description		New in FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Technical Support Services				
Logistics			82,000	90,000
Surveyor	0.30	15,480	24,600	26,700
Surveying Technician	0.20	17,100	11,800	9,200
TOTAL		32,580	118,400	125,900

NEW PROJECTS:

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: C.7. LITTLE COLORADO RIVER SYNTHESIS OF EXISTING DATA

Project Descriptions : Proposed as a new synthesis project of integrated research on the historical variability and change that has occurred with respect to physical, biological and cultural resources within the Little Colorado River drainage basin. The main objective of this research is to study relationships between changes in the physical processes and resources of the Little Colorado River drainage basin and associated biological and cultural resources. Topics of research concern include: issues related to introduction of non-native species and interactions with non-native fishes (primarily, humpback chub), trends in land use, depletions affecting hydrology of base flow (spring effluent), regulation impacts within the basin and any related affects on runoff “events,” changes in basin hydrology and relations to climatic variability, and historical changes in sediment supply and sediment transport relations associated with basin hydrology. This new synthesis research is intended to support a variety of MOs associated with Goals 2, 7, 8.

Project Schedule: FY 2004 through FY 2005

Proposed Budget: \$200,000.00 (requested appropriations for FY 2004)

Budget: \$200,000

LCR SYNTHESIS OF EXISTING DATA	New in	New in
Appropriations - Requested Funding	FY-2004	FY-2005
Contracts	200,000	
TOTAL	200,000	

D. OTHER SCIENCE ACTIVITIES

ONGOING PROJECTS:

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: D.1. UNSOLICITED PROPOSALS

The GCMRC proposes to retain \$ 63,500 in FY 2004 to support unsolicited proposals. This will allow for flexibility in the program and help ensure that GCMRC can address critical issues in a timely fashion. It will also provide GCMRC the ability to fund truly outstanding proposals that addresses a key concern that may be overlooked in the research planning process. All unsolicited proposals will be discussed with the TWG and will undergo independent, external peer review prior to funding.

The GCMRC encourages Tribal groups to submit proposals for projects that address resource issues related to Management Objectives. Because these groups define their resource issues from tribal perspectives and formulate their work proposals, the GCMRC considers these submittals as unsolicited proposals. These proposals are reviewed by internal and external peer reviewers to evaluate the proposed project methodologies relative to the project objectives. Unsolicited proposals may be submitted to the GCMRC at any time. At the present time, the ongoing Adopt-a-Beach project is anticipated for FY 2004. The project description and budget follow.

ADOPT-A-BEACH PROJECT

Rational/Problem Statement: Recreational beaches can be impacted by flows and unexpected debris flows. Regularly scheduled field monitoring generally occurs on quarterly and biannual basis and impacts can be experienced during this time. Volunteer river guides are monitoring beaches on a constant basis and can provide immediate information on impacts.

Integration: To achieve an ecosystem-level understanding of the relationships between resources of the CRE and Glen Canyon Dam operations, integration of long-term monitoring between physical, cultural, biological, and recreational resources is required. This project will provide a means to provide immediate information concerning a recreational and physical resources and impacts to assist in the ecosystem assessment of the resources.

General Project Description : Through volunteer efforts, this project collects repeat photographic data on changes at selected beaches throughout the CRE. Project data supplements quantitative data collected under other protocols. Data are collected throughout the river season and presently consist of several years of archived data. The project personnel disseminate data at educational and other public workshops.

Project Goals and Objectives:

- Collect repeat photographic data at selected beach locations ranging from 3 to 10 photographic sets
- Provide qualitative data to assist in focusing quantitative efforts
- Provide volunteer efforts to assist the AMP in resource monitoring

MOs Addressed: This project addresses recreational resource management objectives MO 9.3.

Expected Products:

- Photographic data collection of selected beach locations
- Integrative data report on beach changes relative to flow regimes
- Education and data dissemination to recreational community

Recommended Approach/Methods: Repeat photographic monitoring of selected beaches provides immediate information on impacts to these resources. Photo locations and methods are standardized. Qualitative data provide a mechanism to focus more labor intensive and costly assessments.

Status: This project is ongoing and was originally approved and implemented in 1996. The estimated cost is \$ 10,000.

External Project Awards: Annual awards have been made to the Grand Canyon River Guides (GCRG) for this project, subject to acceptance of their unsolicited proposals.

Project Accomplishments: An annual report is submitted to the GCMRC by the GCRG. In addition, the project data are disseminated at the annual Guides training session prior to the river season, through the Boatman's Quarterly journal, and at workshops and the GCMRC science symposium.

Schedule: This project is ongoing on an annual basis, subject to receipt and acceptance of an unsolicited proposal. A project review will be scheduled prior to FY 2004 funding to evaluate integration and utility with other GCMRC projects.

Fall	Winter	Spring	Summer
Data compilation and analysis	Data analysis and report write up	Workshops Data dissemination	Report delivery and new data collection

The following budget refers to all unsolicited proposals in FY 2004. The recreational component is a total of \$ 14,500.

Budget: \$88,880

UNSOLICITED PROPOSALS				
Description	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)				
Cultural Program Manager 0.04			4,500	3,880
Contracts .				
Biology	70,000	72,000	49,000	35,000
Physical				40,000
Cultural	50,000	51,000		
Adopt-A-Beach			10,000	10,000
TOTAL	120,000	123,000	63,500	88,880

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: D.2. AMWG & TWG REQUESTS (IN TARGETS)

In addition, GCMRC historically budgets funding that can be used in support of requests that arise from the AMWG and TWG during the course of the year. In FY 2004 GCMRC proposes to use this \$75,850 to continue the development of target levels for the Management Objectives begun in FY 2002. This has been identified as an important activity during the development of the revised Information Needs. This will be a collaborative process where GCMRC brings scientific information that establishes a range within which a target can be established and the TWG, on behalf of the AMWG, makes a recommendation regarding where within the range the target should be established.

Budget: \$64,155

AMWG/TWG REQUESTS				
Description	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)				
Chief 0.05			7,700	8,355
Biology Program Manager 0.05			5,150	5,800
Contracts	60,000	61,000	63,000	50,000
TOTAL	60,000	61,000	75,850	64,155

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: D.3. IN-HOUSE RESEARCH

The GCMRC supports in-house research by GCMRC Program Managers and scientific staff. In-house research is supported as a means of ensuring that GCMRC program managers and scientific staff remain subject area experts in their respective fields through the conduct of their own research on the Colorado River ecosystem. Funds totaling \$26,000 will be available to support these activities in FY 2004. This also ensures that they are able to provide the highest quality of technical assistance in the form of expert analysis, opinion, and advice to the Chief, TWG and the AMWG as requested. In-house research may be in the form of original research or synthesis. In all cases, GCMRC in-house research proposals undergo the same independent external review as all GCMRC proposals.

Budget: \$22,000

IN-HOUSE RESEARCH Description	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)				
Contracts - Cultural			5,000	
Operating Expenses	20,000	20,000	21,000	22,000
TOTAL	20,000	20,000	26,000	22,000

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: D.4. TRIBAL OUTREACH: TRIBAL TRAINING, SCIENCE/TRIBAL PERSPECTIVES INTEGRATION/TRIBAL INTERNS

Rational/Problem Statement: Dissemination of information collected within the GCMRC cultural resource program for the benefit of the Adaptive Management Program Stakeholders and the interested public. This project implements the recommendations of the Cultural Resource PEP to coordinate with AMP stakeholders and the Native American representatives to disseminate information.

Integration: To achieve an ecosystem-level of understanding of the relationships between resources of the Colorado River and Glen Canyon Dam operations, integration of long-term monitoring between physical, cultural, biological, and recreational resources

is required. This project will provide a means to disseminate cultural resource information concerning the ecosystem resources.

General Project Description: Incorporation of Tribal stakeholder perspectives within the AMP/GCMRC project development, implementation and activities. The project provides a mechanism for the integration of tribal perspectives within western science projects including the use of tribal interns for projects and activities at GCMRC and with AMP stakeholders. Tribal outreach activities may address several AMP activities rather than a specific project.

Project Goals and Objectives:

- Increase tribal participation within AMP project development and implementation
- Increase tribal participation within AMP project activities
- Utilize tribal interns to assist in project development, implementation and activities
- Link project with other public outreach/involvement efforts

MOs Addressed: This project addresses cultural resource management objectives MO 11.1 and 11.2.

Expected Products:

- Conduct workshops at GCMRC provide training to tribal stakeholders on technological issues, specific legislative issues, and other AMP specific issues.
- Utilize tribal interns within GCMRC and AMP stakeholders to assist with project development, implementation and activities.
- Provide AMP with report of activities of this project and recommendations for future activities

Recommended Approach/Methods: Methods include, but are not limited to, recruiting tribal interns to participate in GCMRC program and activities and conducting workshops and trainings for tribal stakeholders.

Status: This project is a continuation of work approved in FY 2003 and provides a mechanism to fund numerous types of activities as they are suggested. The estimated cost is \$ 30,000.

External Project Awards: There have been no external awards to date.

Project Accomplishments: There are no accomplishments to date, as this project has not been initiated.

Schedule: The duration of this project is one year and the estimated cost is \$ 30,000.

Fall	Winter	Spring	Summer
Initiate efforts to recruit tribal interns Schedule workshops and trainings	Conduct workshops, trainings, utilize interns	Continue workshops, use of interns	Report write up to AMP

Budget: \$34,850

TRIBAL OUTREACH Description	New in FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)		
Cultural Program Manager 0.05	4,500	4,850
Other Operating Expenses		
Tribal Participation and Workshops	40,000	30,000
TOTAL	44,500	34,850

**PROJECT TITLE AND ID: D.5. PUBLIC OUTREACH / INVOLVEMENT
PLAN IMPLEMENTATION**

Rationale/Problem Statement: Implementation of a project to disseminate information collected within the program for the benefit of the Adaptive Management Program Stakeholders and the interested public.

Integration: To achieve an ecosystem-level of understanding of the relationships between resources of the Colorado River and Glen Canyon Dam operations, integration of long-term monitoring between physical, cultural, biological, and recreational resources is required. This project will provide a means to disseminate information concerning the ecosystem resources.

General Project Description: Implementation of a plan to disseminate information collected within the cultural resource program and other resource areas for the benefit of the Adaptive Management Program Stakeholders and the interested public. In conjunction with an ad hoc group of the AMWG and pursuant to Executive Orders relative to Tribal consultation, GCMRC is developing public outreach activities. To coordinate GCMRC's overall public outreach efforts and the public outreach efforts under Reclamation's Programmatic Agreement program, a public outreach/involvement plan is necessary. This project will implement the public outreach plan that was approved in FY 2003. Plan implementation will address cultural sensitive data and the dissemination processes will be discussed with Native American groups prior to project implementation. This project implements the recommendations of the Cultural Resource PEP to coordinate public outreach efforts by AMP stakeholders, including Native American representatives to disseminate information. This plan forms a portion of the overall Historic Preservation Plan suite of documents. Project is also funded by Reclamation.

Project Goals and Objectives:

- Implement a plan to guide and coordinate dissemination of cultural material
- Implement a plan to coordinate dissemination of material from other resource areas.
- Incorporate and address issues concerning culturally sensitive data and dissemination processes with Native American groups and other concerned parties
- Implement mechanisms for information dissemination and education.
- Implement for participation of the stakeholders in the dissemination process.

MOs Addressed: This project addresses cultural resource management objectives MOs 11.1, 11.2, 11.3.

Expected Products:

- Implement Public outreach/involvement plan
- Identification of current outreach efforts and future mechanisms for information dissemination include presentations, workshop materials, and scoping efforts to expand dissemination efforts

Recommended Approach/Methods: An RFP was issued for the outreach plan development in FY 2003. This project will implement the recommendations of that plan.

Status: The development of the outreach plan was approved in FY 2003. This project, plan implementation is new for FY 2004. This is a new project proposed for FY 2004 for the duration of one year. The estimated cost for the project is \$ 14,850.

External Project Awards: There have been no awards to date, as this project will be awarded in FY 2004.

Project Accomplishments: There are no accomplishments to date, as this project has not been awarded.

Schedule - Project Time Line FY 2004:

Fall	Winter	Spring	Summer
RFP drafted and released (October 2002)	Project awarded	Workshops for plan implementation	Report on plan implementation

Budget: \$14,850

PUBLIC OUTREACH INVOLVEMENT PLAN Description	New in FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)		
Cultural Program Manager (.05)	4,500	4,850
Contracts		
Cultural	30,000	10,000
TOTAL	34,500	14,850

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: D.6. CULTURAL RESOURCE SYNTHESIS AND STATUS REPORT

Rationale/Problem Statement: A status of cultural resources within the CRE is important to on-going and future activities. Data concerning these resources is collected by several groups. Synthesizing this information from all sources provides the most comprehensive report of the current status of the resources.

Integration: To achieve an ecosystem-level of understanding of the relationships between resources of the Colorado River and Glen Canyon Dam operations, integration of long-term monitoring between physical, cultural, biological, and recreational resources is required. This project will provide a means to disseminate cultural resource information concerning the ecosystem resources.

General Project Description: A synthesis of the current status of socio - cultural resources is briefly presented in the annual SCORE report. Given the number of projects and efforts within the Tribal groups, NPS, Reclamation and GCMRC, this information needs to be consolidated and coordinated to provide current and comprehensive information for these resources. This project will incorporate data from these sources and provide a general synthetic report of the knowledge gained from these projects and integrated across resource areas. In addition, this project will integrate information from the terrestrial monitoring projects with other cultural data. As additional projects from other resource areas develop cultural components they will be included within the synthetic data. The report will be developed in-house by GCMRC through collaboration within AMP stakeholders.

Project Goals and Objectives:

- Coordinate data collected from stakeholder and GCMRC projects to provide up to date synthetic report on resources.
- Provide more comprehensive knowledge to the SCORE report.

MOs Addressed: This project addresses current cultural resource management objectives, MOs 11.1, 11.2.

Expected Products:

- Conduct workshops at GCMRC to share and collaborate on data obtained from projects
- Provide an improved, more comprehensive socio-cultural component to the SCORE report.

Recommended Approach/Methods: This project will be organized by GCMRC staff and will consist of a data collection and analysis and a series of workshops to share the results of information collected by various groups on projects conducted those groups.

GCMRC staff will draft a resource status report based on this data sharing. The report will be incorporated in the SCORE report.

Status: This project was originally approved in FY 2003 and is on-going in FY 2004.

External Project Awards: This project will be conducted in-house at GCMRC; there will be not external awards.

Project Accomplishments: There are no accomplishments to date, as this project has not been initiated.

Schedule: The duration of this project is one year and the estimated cost is \$10,850.

Spring	Summer	Fall	Winter
Workshops to discuss existing project data	Data collection	Workshops Data compilation	Report write up

Budget: \$10,850

CULTURAL RESOURCES SYNTHESIS & STATUS REPORT DESCRIPTION	New in FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)		
Cultural Program Manager 0.05	4,500	4,850
Other Operating Expenses (workshops)	10,000	6,000
TOTAL	14,500	10,850

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: D.7. ORAL TRADITION AND FOLKLORE SYNTHESIS AND EVALUATION

Rationale/Problem Statement: The tribes involved in the AMP have previously provided information about their oral tradition and tribal history as related to the canyons. However, this information is in separate reports and the level of information is uneven. The existing information has not been assessed in a comprehensive manner nor has it been evaluated for either compliance or research purposes. The goal of this study is to evaluate the comparability and comprehensiveness of the available tribal information as it

relates to Native American Graves Protection and Repatriation Act (NAGPRA), and identify where information is unavailable. NAGPRA is a responsibility of the NPS and Reclamation. This project will provide information that will assist them in meeting that responsibility. In addition this project will assist stakeholders in management decision for resources and potential impacts to these resources.

Integration: To achieve an ecosystem-level of understanding of the relationships between resources of the Colorado River and Glen Canyon Dam operations, integration of long-term monitoring between physical, cultural, biological, and recreational resources is required. This project will evaluate the tribal information and how it is presented utilizing the underlying NAGPRA requirements as a baseline standard and contribute information on the cultural resources that form part of the ecosystem.

General Project Description: This is an ethnographic project that is a companion project to the research design that is being prepared for the Historic Preservation Plan under PA program. This project will be contracted to an expert in oral traditions, ethnohistory, folklore, and anthropology. The contractor, utilizing tribal and other reports generated by the Glen Canyon Environmental Studies, Grand Canyon Monitoring and Research Center, published ethnographic sources, the Human Relations Area Files, and/or other available sources of information, will evaluate whether the extant information is comprehensive enough to address the tribal connections and cultural affiliation to the various earlier identified cultural groups within the Grand Canyon. These cultural groups are represented through the archeological sites, historic sites, and other material culture. Based on the outcome of this study, additional projects to address information gaps will be proposed. Examples may include work on linguistics, biology, archaeology, geography, history, etc.

Project Goals and Objectives:

- Compile and synthesize the existing information
- Present the information in a comprehensive, coherent document.

- Document will also evaluate the temporal validity of the information with respect to the various earlier identified cultural groups expressed in the canyon.
- Document will serve as one of the lines of evidence for cultural affiliation of the tribes as it applies to compliance with NAGPRA.

MOs Addressed: This addresses MOS in goals 11 and 12.

Expected Products:

- One report synthesizing and compiling the existing folklore, oral tradition, anthropological tribal information.
- The report will evaluate how this information relates to specific archaeological sites, archaeological cultures, temporal periods, and/or geographic areas within the canyons.
- The contractor and the GCMRC will transmit the draft report to each of the tribes for their review and comment. The tribes will be asked to evaluate and correct respective ethnographic information in the report, and to add additional information, as appropriate.
- The information provided by the tribes will be incorporated into a final report.
- The final report will serve as one of the lines of evidence in a comprehensive affiliation study and assist managers in their decisions concerning cultural resources.

Recommended Approach/Methods: This project will be conducted by a contracted expert in the oral traditions, ethnohistory, folklore, and anthropology. The contractor will evaluate the existing tribal information to determine if the information is comprehensive enough to address the tribal connections and cultural affiliation of the various groups to the Canyon. The synthesized information will be presented in a comprehensive, coherent document.

Based on the results of the information review, additional projects may be proposed to address information gaps. This project may be advertised through the RFP process or

through an alternative process determined by the tribal groups in consultation with GCMRC. All project proposals, will be subject to external peer review.

Status: This project is new for FY 2004.

External Project Awards: There are no awards to date, as this project has not been initiated.

Project Accomplishments: There are no accomplishments to date, as this project has not been initiated.

Schedule: The duration of this project is 12 months from the time of award; the estimated cost is \$54,850.

Fall	Winter	Spring	Summer
Project initiation and award of contract. Initial review of tribal information	Continued information review and assessment. Discussions with tribal groups	Draft report to GCMRC and discussions with tribes.	Development of final report and recommendations for additional work.

Budget: \$54,850

ORAL TRADITIONS AND FOLKLORE SYNTHESIS	
Description	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)	
Cultural Program Manager 0.05	4,850
Project Contract	50,000
TOTAL	54,850

PROJECT TITLE AND ID: D.8. EXPERIMENTAL FLOWS

Discussions concerning experimental flow treatments are ongoing. To date, specific treatments have not been proposed for FY 2004. An overview of the long-term

experimental flows program is provided here and a preliminary budget figure which may support some but not all of the additional research and monitoring required is presented.

General Project Description: In response to the AMWG motion passed on January 18, 2002, the Grand Canyon Monitoring and Research Center (GCMRC) is recommending a program of annual experimental treatments spanning a multi-year time period rather than a single year flow scenario. The decision to expand from the specific directive of the motion to develop a single year flow scenario is motivated by the desire of GCMRC to forward a recommendation that embraces a defensible experimental design and is consistent with the principles of ecosystem science and adaptive management. If the experimental design proposed in this document is adopted by the AMWG, each treatment (e.g., high fluctuating flows from January through March) is proposed for two years. If the monitoring program measures unintended or adverse effects from a treatment, a proposal to end the treatment will be considered.

The notion that the evaluation of a single experimental flow scenario evaluated for a single year will lead to improved learning in an adaptive management framework has been repeatedly criticized. These criticisms are founded, most basically, in the recognition that an experiment without control, replication, or evaluation is not an experiment. Additionally, it has been shown that scientists have a very bad track record for predicting the outcome of single treatment evaluations, and that relying on this tact usually leads to costly mistakes. Based on these premises, GCMRC provides below a discussion of what it believes are the critical elements of a good experimental design and what general steps are required in order to execute an experiment likely to yield increased understanding of processes shaping key resources in Grand Canyon.

An experiment fundamentally relies on three elements: control, treatment replication, and treatment evaluation. The first element, control, is necessary so that the response of the key indicator variable (e.g., sediment storage) to a treatment event (e.g., Beach Habitat Building Flow) can be compared to the state of the key indicator variable during a non-treatment event (e.g., Record of Decision flow). In this way, the state of the key indicator variable during a non-treatment event is the so-called control or “baseline condition”. The difference between a baseline condition and the treatment response is

essentially the fundamental measure of a treatment effect. It is the cumulative affects of individual treatments, when taken together that comprise an experiment.

The second element, treatment replication, is of paramount importance in the context of a large-scale field experiment conducted in a complicated system like the Colorado River ecosystem. This is most easily recognized by considering the suite of non-treatment factors that could be responsible for inducing a response in the indicator variable. For example, consider that humpback chub recruitment is likely mediated by a host of factors both within the Little Colorado River and in the mainstem Colorado River. If we seek to understand the relationship between humpback chub recruitment and one potential controlling factor such as competition/predation with rainbow trout, we must necessarily manipulate the abundance of rainbow trout. However, if poor humpback chub recruitment occurs under the current baseline condition of high rainbow trout abundance, and high humpback chub recruitment occurs under a treatment condition where rainbow trout abundance is lowered, we cannot necessarily conclude that competition/predation with rainbow trout is the controlling factor. This is because there may be some other factor responsible for the high humpback chub recruitment. The only way to have a chance of disentangling this situation is to have multiple treatments (replication) of high and low rainbow trout abundance and evaluate whether the relationship to humpback chub recruitment is robust across these different treatments.

The third element, treatment evaluation, is commonly referred to as monitoring. A robust monitoring program is perhaps the most critical element in a multi-year experiment since it is the mechanism that evaluates the state of the key indicator variable (e.g., sediment storage or humpback chub recruitment). The precision of the treatment evaluation is usually the most important factor in determining the likelihood that an experiment will yield valid results.

GCMRC is confident that monitoring programs for sediment and key fish species are robust enough to consider implementing multi-year experiments. Furthermore, declines in sediment and fish resources detailed in the following document illustrate the need for experimentation in order to discover policy options to reverse these disturbing trends.

GCMRC recommends the initiation of a long-term experiment beginning in year one with the treatment recommended in this document. The year one treatment is consistent with the AMWG motion. GCMRC also recommends a process for developing subsequent year treatments in consultation with the Technical Work Group, Science Advisors, and experts in the field of adaptive management and experimental design. GCMRC has included a draft series of treatments that could be implemented over a 16-0year timeframe as a point of departure for discussions with these groups.

We would suggest that monitoring and research mechanisms be in place to scientifically evaluate, on a yearly basis, the response of both the targeted resources, as well as interactions with other secondary resources in this ecosystem. Having such an evaluation mechanism would allow for a means to assess and determine whether or not to: (1) discontinue a specific treatment if observed to be deleterious; (2) prescribe a management prescription; and (3) include other factors for future testing. However, we also suggest caution in the use of such an evaluation method so as to avoid truncating an experiment prematurely without due cause. The following table illustrates various choices along with treatment elements designed to benefit native fishes in the context in which they would be considered in a longer term adaptive management experiment.

Table 2.4. Experimental Design, Long-Term Sequence of Treatments

Water Year	Fluctuating Flows (Jan – Mar)	Mechanical Removal (Aug – Dec)	Stable Fall Flows (Aug – Dec)	TCD (Future)	BHBF (Jan – Jul)
WY2002-03	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	?
WY2003-04	Yes	Yes	No	No	?
WY2004-05	No	Yes	Yes	No	?
WY2005-06	No	Yes	No	No	?
WY2006-07	No	No	Yes	No	?
WY2007-08	No	No	No	No	?
WY2008-09	Yes	No	Yes	No	?
WY2009-10	Yes	No	No	No	?
WY2010-11	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	?
WY2011-12	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	?
WY2012-13	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	?
WY2013-14	No	Yes	No	Yes	?
WY2014-15	No	No	Yes	Yes	?
WY2015-16	No	No	No	Yes	?
WY2016-17	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	?
WY2017-18	Yes	No	No	Yes	?

Budget: \$1,000,000

Appropriations Request: EXPERIMENTAL FLOWS DESCRIPTION	New in FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)	
Contracts	1,000,000
Biology	
Cultural	
Physical	
Technical Support Services	
Logistics	
Survey	
GIS	
TOTAL	1,000,000

CHAPTER 3

ADMINISTRATION AND TECHNICAL SUPPORT SERVICES

INTRODUCTION

This chapter provides descriptions and budget information on GCMRC administration and technical support services. GCMRC administration includes sections on administrative operations, program planning and management, AMWG/TWG participation, and the independent review process. Technical support services include geographic information systems, systems administration, library operations, database management, survey operations, and logistics support. At the end of this chapter is a schedule for implementing the FY-2004 monitoring and research annual plan.

GCMRC ADMINISTRATION

The GCMRC is administered by a Chief and four program managers (physical, biological, socio-cultural, and information technologies). The program managers oversee the individual resource areas and an extensive program of data analysis and management. GIS and information transfer, surveying, and evaluation of remote sensing technologies support program integration and evaluation of the effects of dam operations on the CRE.

In addition to their program management responsibilities, the program managers are also expected to remain subject area experts in their respective fields through the conduct of their own research on the Colorado River ecosystem. It is important that GCMRC program managers and scientific staff maintain this expertise so they can provide high quality technical assistance in the form of expert analysis, opinion, and advice to the Chief, TWG and the AMWG as requested. This will include but is not limited to the annual State of the Canyon Resources (SCORE) Report, evaluation of the BHBF resource criteria, and preparing syntheses of current knowledge and other such activities that may be requested. The Socio-cultural Program Manager also functions as the Native American coordinator. The program managers supervise additional technical and support staff, and act as project lead with their cooperators.

The Information Technologies program has personnel with specific responsibility for systems administration, data base management, GIS, remote sensing, and surveying activities. These personnel assure critical support to GCMRC monitoring and research program. For example, the surveying department is staffed by two full-time surveyors and a staff assistant who provide GCMRC and PIs with high quality, cost-effective, and timely support in the areas of terrestrial and bathymetric surveying. Having in-house capability ensures familiarity with the challenges of surveying in the canyon and promotes reproducible, quality data critical to sound monitoring and research programs.

The GCMRC will continue to conduct logistics for its programs in FY 2004, with direct coordination with appropriate NPS offices. This approach has proven to be cost-effective. In addition to cost savings, by running the logistics program in-house, GCMRC is able to ensure compliance with all NPS directives, consolidate and coordinate river trips, and create a level playing field so all researchers have an equal chance at competing for proposals and successfully implementing their projects. All river trip logistics and permitting, helicopter support, rescue, etc., is overseen by the logistics coordinator in cooperation with the NPS. GCMRC expects to initiate between 35 and 45 river trips in FY 2004.

E. ADMINISTRATIVE AND MANAGEMENT

E.1. Administrative Operations

These costs are for salary and other operating expenses in support of administrative operations and management of GCMRC. Included is salary of the Chief and administrative staff, space and facilities, travel, training, vehicles, office supplies and equipment and maintenance. Also included are costs for USGS local network and Flagstaff Science Center support, and USGS regional services including contracting and personnel.

Budget: \$818,600

ADMINISTRATIVE OPERATIONS					
Description		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)		318,000	425,280		
Chief	0.40			38,500	66,840
Secretary	0.96			40,320	43,200
Administrative Officer	0.94			63,920	69,560
Administrative Assistant	1.00			34,000	37,000
Student Assistant - Secretary	1.00			14,000	14,000
Student Assistant - Staff	1.00			8,400	14,000
Awards		12,000	20,000	25,000	25,000
Travel		33,000	25,000	34,000	34,000
Space and Telecommunications		180,000	184,000	186,000	190,000
Vehicle Lease & Maintenance		30,000	32,000	32,000	36,000
Training & Conference Attendance		18,000	18,000	18,000	18,000
Supplies and Materials		45,000	48,000	51,000	57,000
Equipment		20,000	20,000	20,000	20,000
Adm & Network Support - USGS FSC		64,000	65,000	65,000	68,000
USGS Regional Support (Pers, Contracts)		125,000	128,000	125,000	126,000
TOTAL		845,000	965,280	755,140	818,600

¹ A greater proportion of salary is being charged directly to program planning and individual projects in FY-2004

E.2. Program Planning and Management

These costs are for salary and travel in support of program planning and management in the areas of Biological, Physical, and Cultural Resources, and Information Technologies.

Budget: \$302,870

PROGRAM PLANNING & MANAGEMENT					
Description		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)		116,370			
Chief	0.40		30,400	77,000	66,840
Secretary			3,440	0	0
Administrative Officer	0.04		4,880	2,720	2,960
Administrative Student				5,600	0
Biology Program Manager	0.35		31,150	41,200	40,600
Biologist - Terrestrial			21,000	0	0
Biologist - Aquatic			33,000	0	0
Biologist - Fisheries	0.05			3,200	3,650
Ecologist			19,200	0	0
Biology Student			10,200	0	0
Physical Program Manager	0.20		19,580	17,000	18,600
Physical Research Student			5,100	0	0
Cultural Program Manager	0.50		15,130	45,000	48,500
Economist - Harpman (TSC)			12,000	0	0
Cultural Student	1.00		17,000	26,000	33,000
IT Program Manager	0.68	78,300	49,840	57,120	60,520
Surveyor	0.05			4,100	4,450
GIS	0.05			4,000	3,750
Travel		24,000	24,000	19,000	20,000
TOTAL		218,670	295,920	301,940	302,870

E.3. AMWG/TWG Participation

These costs are to cover salary and travel to attend and prepare for AMWG and TWG meetings.

Budget: \$55,390

AMWG/TWG PARTICIPATION					
Description		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)					
Chief	0.10		45,600	15,400	16,710
Secretary	0.04		1,720	1,680	1,800
Administrative Officer	0.02		1,220	1,360	1,480
Biology Program Manager	0.05		4,450	5,150	5,800
Physical Program Manager	0.05		4,450	4,250	4,650
Cultural Program Manager	0.05		4,450	4,500	4,850
IT Program Manager	0.05		7,120	4,200	4,450
Biologist - Fisheries	0.05			3,200	3,650
Surveyor			3,440	0	0
GIS Specialist			2,400	0	0
Database Manager			2,960	0	0
Travel		12,000	12,000	12,000	12,000
TOTAL		12,000	89,810	51,740	55,390

E.4. Independent Review Panels

Introduction

Independent external review is at the heart of GCMRC's approach to program management and implementation. Together with the competitive process, independent external peer-review ensures the quality and objectivity of GCMRC's programs. Independent review panels are utilized to evaluate GCMRC's plans and activities. All proposals, reports, programs, etc., are subject to independent peer review according to GCMRC's peer-review protocols. Managing GCMRC's peer-review process requires 3 to 6 person-months and is the responsibility of the Librarian/Review Coordinator. The Review Coordinator reports directly to the Chief.

Peer Review

All of GCMRC's scientific activities undergo an independent, external peer-review. This is true for all proposals, whether unsolicited, solicited, or an in-house proposal. Similarly, all draft reports received by GCMRC undergo independent, external peer-review. The peer-review protocols developed by GCMRC meet or exceed the standards articulated by the Secretary of the Interior for the Department of the Interior.

Peer-review for proposals received by GCMRC in response to an RFP is conducted through a panel process, while peer-review for unsolicited and in-house proposals, as well as project reports is conducted through the mail. In all cases, the peer-reviewers are offered anonymity and the individual and panel reviews, where applicable, are provided to the PIs along with comments from GCMRC. In addition, GCMRC conducts protocol evaluation panels (PEPs) to review and assess GCMRC's projects and methodologies. To date, PEPs have been held for remote sensing, physical, terrestrial, aquatic, cultural resources, and the water quality program. The survey and GIS support services PEP is scheduled for Winter 2001/2002. PEPs are described in Chapter 1 of this plan.

The GCMRC review process is handled by a report review coordinator to ensure that the peer-review process is conducted one-step removed from the GCMRC program managers to guard against any conflicts of interest, real or perceived. Strict conflict-of-interest guidelines are adhered to. GCMRC annually recruits new individuals to join the ranks of its peer-reviewers and maintains a database of almost 500 potential reviewers, organized by area of expertise. GCMRC peer-reviewers come from academia, Federal, State and Tribal government, non-governmental organizations, and the private sectors. Reviewers are selected on the basis of their record of scientific accomplishment and expertise.

Science Advisors

The GCMRC established a group of Science Advisors (SAs) in FY 2002 as one of its independent review panels. The SAs are advisory and not a decision-making body. It is an interdisciplinary group composed of scientists who are qualified, based on their record of publication in the peer-reviewed literature, or other demonstrable scientific achievements. GCMRC has designated a person to serve as the Executive Director who provides leadership to the SAs and serves as the liaison officer to the AMWG and the GCMRC.

The SAs together and individually will be expected in FY 2004, among other things, to review and comment to the AMWG and GCMRC on: (1) GCMRC's annual work plan and budget proposal, (2) GCMRC's long-term monitoring and research plan, (3) the results of GCMRC's completed monitoring and research activities, (4) the results of any synthesis and assessment activities initiated by the GCMRC, and (5) any other activities (i.e., program specific scientific advice) it is asked to address by the GCMRC Chief or the AMWG.

Resources Program Manager and appropriate representatives of Reclamation, FWS, AGFD, Tribal governments, and other AMWG and TWG members. All proposed activities are reviewed by the TWG.

F. TECHNICAL SUPPORT SERVICES

Information Technologies

The goal of the Information Technology Program (ITP) is to satisfy the information needs of the GCDAMP relative to the Colorado River ecosystem in terms of content and delivery. Key to achieving this goal is the development and maintenance of three core information technologies: 1) a data base management system (DBMS) for tabular information and other electronic non-spatial information, 2) a geographic information system (GIS) for electronic spatial information, and 3) a library for hardcopy information (Figure 3.1). Content of these systems consists of all information gathered as the result of GCMRC investigations, GCES investigations, and additional information relating to the Colorado River ecosystem.

Data in itself is of little use without sufficient information as to its context, quality, and comparability. Therefore, data standards have been developed which preserve the context under which the data was collected and ensures its quality and comparability from year to year, place to place, researcher to researcher, and discipline to discipline. Data collection efforts supported by the GCMRC incorporate strict data standards and protocols that provide consistency in data collection, storage, and delivery from disparate sources.

The GCMRC has extensive historical data and information collected over many years relating to the condition of resources in the Colorado River ecosystem. This information represents an extremely valuable asset to the Glen Canyon Dam Adaptive Management Program (GCDAMP). Its potential for problem solving, improving management guidelines, modeling relationships, or increasing understanding of the key resources and systems under study requires placing this legacy data into an ecologically integrated database and geographic information system (GIS).

Delivery of electronic content will be automated where possible using user-friendly World Wide Web browser interfaces. Library content, while not deliverable across the Internet, has been cataloged and is searchable electronically utilizing similar interfaces.

Warehoused data conforms to the National Information Infrastructure (NII), the National Biological Information Infrastructure (NBII), and the National Spatial Data Infrastructure (NSDI). Guidelines and protocols promulgated by these infrastructures is being incorporated into GCMRC database design and delivery systems whenever possible.

DBMS, GIS, and library operations together form the core information system infrastructure for storing and retrieving information at the GCMRC. Data standards and protocols ensure the quality and compatibility of the information contained within those systems. World Wide Web browsers provide intuitive, consistent interfaces to the information. However, information technology at the GCMRC goes beyond the content and delivery of information. In addition, the ITP also provides:

- Computer support to GCMRC staff
- Survey support to researchers
- Development of remote sensing applications

These additional services augment the core information infrastructures by providing the support, training, technology transfer, and development necessary to provide a comprehensive ITP.

Information Technology Program Functions

To satisfy the information needs of the GCDAMP in FY2004, the IT program will focus on 7 functions: 1) GIS operations, 2) database management, 3) library operations, 4) survey operations, 5) decision support, 6) systems administration, and 7), aerial photography. Each function of the IT program is described in detail below. Descriptions include general information concerning the role of the function within the GCMRC, proposed objectives to be accomplished in FY2004, and proposed budgets. IT functions are either performed by GCMRC staff or procured through a contracting process. Non-contracted program budgets include operating costs and salaries that combine to represent

the total cost of the function (less the cost of space and administrative overhead). Operating costs include equipment, supplies, technical training, and travel relating to program functions. Contracted IT functions represents the total cost of the contracted service or product to GCMRC less the cost of administrating the contract by the appropriate contracting officers technical representative.

Non-contracted IT program functions have associated with them ongoing objectives that are necessary to organize and manage the various types of scientific data acquired by GCMRC or its contractors. These ongoing objectives include administration of the function, servicing work requests, servicing data requests, incorporating new data into developed data systems, and performing annual inventories.

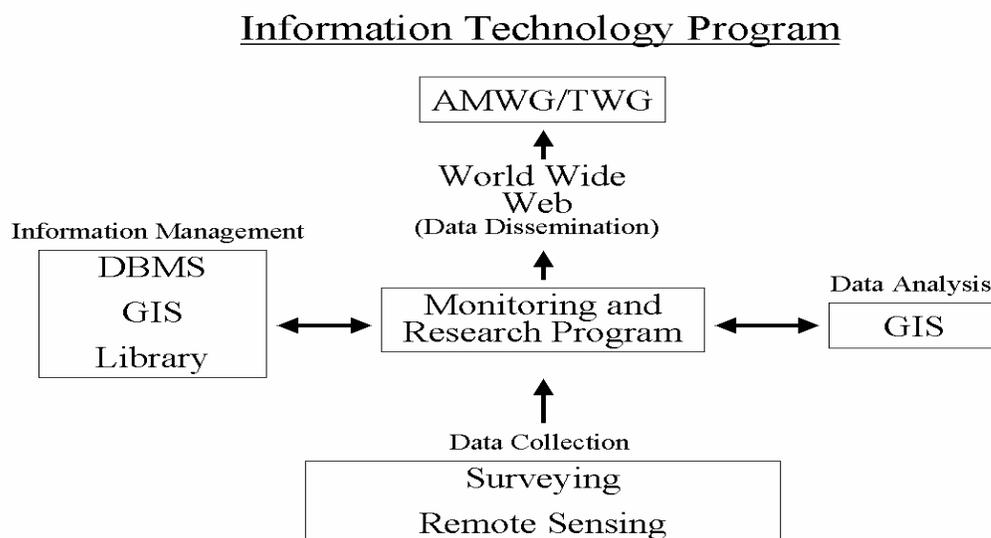


Figure 3.1. – Schematic illustrating the relationship of various Information Technology Program functions to the GCMRC monitoring and research program and the AMWG and TWG.

F.1. Geographic Information Systems

The purpose of the GCMRC GIS program is to provide storage and analysis capabilities to for spatial datasets to the GCMRC staff and stakeholders. GIS is an important analytical tool for change detection of biological, cultural, and physical data.

The GCES program developed up to 20 thematic coverages associated with spatial relationships of biological, cultural and cultural resources at 17 GIS sites (Figure 1.2) within the Colorado River ecosystem (CRE). Tabular attribute data exists as part of these data sets. These data sets are known as “base data”. In addition, other GIS data sets which were constructed as part of past GCES-supported investigations and delivered as part of a final product. These data sets are known as “contributor data”. Efforts are now underway to catalog, describe, and distribute base and contributor data. The GCMRC is working to increase the GIS coverage of the CRE by using modern light detection and ranging (LIDAR) mapping techniques.

Ongoing GIS activities are:

- Administer GIS data systems
- Service GIS map, data, and analysis request
- Integrate current year monitoring data into data systems
- Coordinate collection of remotely sensed data sets

FY2004 GIS activities are:

- Internet map server development project

Internet map server development project

The purpose of this project is to develop an easy-to-use, internet-accessible, graphic interface to the GCMRC monitoring and research GIS layers and Oracle database files. The Internet Map Server (IMS) runs inside a standard Internet browser allowing a broad range of users, from GCMRC staff to cooperators to the general public, to display, query, and download GIS layers and Oracle database tables. This project is intended to increase the accessibility, usability, and value of the existing and future GCMRC data collection efforts. This is a three-year project scheduled to begin in FY2002. In FY2004, a pilot internet map server will be deployed with limited mapping, query, and downloading functionality.

Budget: \$146,500

GEOGRAPHIC INFORMATION SYSTEMS					
Description		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)					
GIS Specialist	0.46	48,800	33,600	36,000	34,500
GIS Assistant	0.75	42,000	40,850	48,000	39,000
GIS Student	1.00		17,000	12,000	17,000
Travel			4,000	5,000	5,000
Services			8,000	8,000	10,000
Supplies and Materials		12,000	11,000	12,000	12,000
Equipment			35,000	29,000	29,000
TOTAL		102,800	149,450	150,000	146,500

F.2. Data Base Management System

The purpose of the GCMRC DBMS is to store and deliver all tabular and other electronic non-spatial information gathered as the result of GCMRC investigations and legacy data. Developing the DBMS requires inventorying, organizing, archiving, and developing delivery systems for many years worth of environmental data collection activities representing a vast array of disparate data including physical, biological, cultural, socio-economic, and climatic information. Some data resides on mature DBMS systems but much of it is stored on floppy disks or hard disks on personal computers using PC-type spreadsheets and database formats. Although the objective of the information technology program is to provide a centralized database management system (DBMS), it is our policy not to duplicate fully developed and accessible data warehousing already provided by other entities. In these circumstances it is preferable to interrogate the off-site database remotely when possible. However, the GCMRC will act as a clearinghouse of data owned by other entities in the case where remote database interrogation is not possible. The DBMS program is currently working on bringing together years of disparate historical data, collected by multiple entities located in databases across the southwest, in an organized fashion and then deliver it transparently to stakeholders and researchers for decision making and modeling purposes. In addition,

the DBMS program is developing a process that includes adequate documentation and training for users to easily access, query, and obtain data from the information system.

The Oracle data base engine was selected for GCMRC data base development. Oracle is a state-of-the-art data storage and delivery system that can function either as a centralized or distributed data base and incorporates a high degree of information technology integration. Important features of the DBMS are:

1. All data is being ecologically integrated. Meaning that data is being stored in a consistent format relative to time, space, researcher, and discipline. This is essential for comprehensive ecological analysis. Appropriate data standards and protocols have been, or in some cases, will be developed to regulate this feature.
2. Spatial data is being geographically integrated. Although the database does not contain a spatial data analysis engine, the GIS used by the GCMRC will be highly integrated with, and dependent upon, the database for storing attribute data associated with spatial features. Data contained in the database is being spatially referenced within the database where appropriate.
3. Public data will be freely available. Sensitive data will be protected. User accessibility is being configured item-by-item.
4. The database will be searchable over the Internet using browser interfaces. Intuitive browser interfaces will be the primary method used to interrogate the database.

The GCMRC data base development is occurring over an 18-month period ending in FY2004.

Ongoing Activities:

- Administer the database
- Service data requests
- Integrate current year data into data system

FY2004 Activities:

- Database development project

Database development project

The need for a comprehensive database for maintaining this information was recognized by the National Academy of Sciences in their initial review of the GCES Program in 1987, and reinforced during a second review in 1990. Extensive data and information currently exists in the GCMRC collections relating to resource conditions, quality, and relationships to other resources. Potentially equal amounts of data and information exist within museums, universities, agencies, etc. However, much of this information has not been organized, managed or integrated into an analysis of the interrelationship among various resources and dam operations. Currently, an ARC/INFO based Geographic Information System (GIS) is used for spatial data storage, analysis, and data transfer of information to users. In conjunction, a centralized integrated, relational database will be developed to facilitate exchange of information among projects. The software selected for this relational database is Oracle. The data base management project is a 18 month project that began in FY2001 and is scheduled to be completed in FY2003. It is anticipated that the development and implementation phase of the database will be completed near the end of FY2002. Activities in FY2003 will largely focus on fine-tuning the database system and conducting training and workshops.

Budget: \$100,300

DATABASE MANAGEMENT					
Description		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)					
Data Base Manager	0.65	73,000	56,240	67,000	53,300
Travel			3,000	1,000	2,000
Contracts (Oracle)		160,000	10,000	10,000	10,000
Services			3,000	5,000	5,000
Supplies and Materials			10,000	10,000	11,000
Equipment			19,000	20,000	19,000
TOTAL		233,000	101,240	113,000	100,300

F.3. Library Operations

Library operations facilitate monitoring and research by providing a centralized repository for hard copy information such as books, reports, maps, photography, and

videos. The scope and purpose of the library is to collect, archive and deliver materials that assist GCMRC in its efforts to administer long-term monitoring and research.

Inherent in the administration of long term monitoring and research plans is the delivery of hard copy documents, photographs, slides, videotapes, and ARC/Info coverages. A policy for loaning these materials has been developed in a manner that is fair to all researchers, with underlying GCMRC staffing resources determining the ability to deliver and track loaned materials. Delivery of materials also emphasizes technologies that permit remote multi-user access.

A secondary function is to provide funded researchers access and use of the library's materials and to provide non-funded researchers and the general public with access to documents unique to GCMRC's holdings (duplicate documents available at other institutions provide non-funded researchers access to these materials). The singularity of a document requires a special policy concerning the borrowing of these materials. Because these unique documents are considered part of the public domain, their availability to the public is required

Materials collection, for the purpose of research and monitoring efforts, are coordinated with program managers and information technology managers. Criteria for the accession of materials include:

1. Applicability of materials to specific research efforts and to overall research and management goals; adequacy of the facility and equipment needs of the GCMRC to house materials; ability of the staff to archive and deliver materials;
2. Availability of funding for materials (e.g., general reference books, government publications, CD ROM's, etc.).

Material collection also includes accessioning documents that are the product of research funded by GCMRC.

Library holdings included the following:

1. Hard copies and electronic copy of final funded research reports.
2. Reprints of articles resulting from funded research.
3. Books resulting from research efforts associated with GCMRC.
4. Books and articles related to Grand and Glen Canyons.

5. Books and articles related to natural and controlled riverine environments.
6. Photographs and slides developed by GCMRC staff (aerial and field documentation).
7. CD-ROM and DVD-ROM versions of aerial photographs and slides.
8. Videotapes (overflights, programs related to Glen and Grand Canyon).
9. Maps (topographic, flightline maps, Arc/Info Coverages, Orthophotos).

Archival materials are one of a kind, or hard to replace items (e.g., original aerial photographs, slides, videotapes). Utilizing imaging technology (e.g., CD-ROM's) and electronic media to develop copies of archived materials should always be investigated and promoted so that copies of these materials can be made available to the general collection, and thus reducing the incidence of loss of unique and irreplaceable materials.

Ongoing library activities are:

- Administer library operations
- Service library requests
- Integrate current year data into library
- Continue making content available on-line
- Annual inventory

FY2004 library activities are:

- Aerial photography scanning project

Aerial photography scanning project

The GCMRC's library collection includes almost 26,000 aerial photographs of the Colorado River spanning a period of 65 years. Of all of the types of media available in the library, including reports, photos, videotapes, slides, and maps, the aerial photos are the most used by researchers. Repeated use has degraded the quality of the photographs; some have been damaged and others have been lost. While some of the negatives are available through the various contractors who have collected the data, others are not. Presently, the photo collection is at risk because it is not stored under fireproof and waterproof conditions. Transferring these images into a digital format will provide greater accessibility to researchers and better preservation of the original media. Photographs, including both black and white and color infrared images would be

selected, scanned, compressed, and archived onto GCMRC electronic data systems and DVD. The aerial photography scanning project is a four year project that is scheduled to begin in FY2004 and continue through FY2006. In FY2004, activities of this project include acquiring an appropriate scanner and conducting a pilot study.

Budget: \$25,000

LIBRARY OPERATIONS					
Description		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)					
Technical Info. Spec	0.80	51,000	47,500	32,800	36,800
Travel			1,500	2,000	2,000
Services			1,500	1,000	1,000
Supplies and Materials			10,000	26,000	36,000
Equipment			5,000		
TOTAL		51,000	65,500	61,800	75,800

Appropriations - Requested Funding	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Equipment - Library Scanner				25,000
TOTAL			0	25,000

F.4. Survey Operations

The Survey department's mission is to provide survey support for spatial measurement and referencing of scientific data collected in the Colorado River ecosystem by GCMRC programs. This support may be in the form of precise measurement of geographic coordinates of a sample collected in the Canyon or in the generation of topographic maps used for erosion monitoring of terraces adjacent to the Colorado River. The Survey department is also responsible for establishing and maintaining accurate geographic control in the Canyon that is essential for accurate geo-referencing of remotely sensed data and change detection of resource data using modern image processing and GIS technologies. These technologies are critical to the integration and analysis of the diverse scientific data that have been collected in the Canyon over the past 15 years. Products of the Survey department include precise sample location coordinates,

topographic maps, river channel maps and cross sections, digital elevation models, and digital terrain models. This information provides the basis for spatial analysis of data within the ecosystem using GIS software that in turn provides area and volumetric change detection capabilities.

The Survey department is responsible for the development of sound topographic and mapping control required to build accurate spatial data sets that can be used for reliable change detection. David Evan's and Associates and Banner and Associates were hired in 1990 to establish a reliable geodetic control network. In 1991 Joseph Mihalko (NPS surveyor) occupied the Banner ground control points for a soil mapping project by the USGS. He found that the control points did not meet their claimed accuracy and precision. As a result, GCES established a survey department to correct all previously established survey control as well as meet research needs of the future.

The Survey department uses a variety of technology to assist in accomplishing its mission in a timely, cost effective manner that utilizes a minimum amount of personnel. These technologies include global positioning systems, multibeam acoustic technology, and conventional total station survey technology.

Ongoing activities are:

- Administer the survey program
- Service survey work requests
- Provide survey, control, and GPS support to remote sensing data collection activities

FY2004 activities are:

- Survey control network
- Hydrographic channel mapping

Survey control network

The survey control network is fundamental to spatially positioning all scientific data collected as part of the GCDAMP. Currently, only about a quarter of the CRE has adequate geographic control that meets the needs of near and long-term monitoring and research plan and fewer have been upgraded to the rim control standard. Survey control

is required throughout the remainder of the CRE to fully implement the long-term monitoring and research activities.

Accurate spatial positioning of scientific data facilitates integration across resource areas by providing common geographic framework to store and analyze data. Many resource monitoring programs depend upon changes in the spatial distribution of resources as the basis of their monitoring strategy. Spatial analysis tools such as a GIS depend upon accurate geo-referencing of data to provide meaningful analysis. Without geographic control, geo-referencing of resource data and subsequent spatial analysis is impractical. The survey control network project is a five-year project that began in 2000 and is scheduled to be complete in 2006 to the upgraded rim control standard.

Hydrographic channel mapping

The hydrographic mapping program is intended to facilitate all monitoring efforts requiring sub-aqueous measurements. The two areas of hydrographic mapping consist of an ongoing system-wide channel map and a repeatable reach monitoring for annual change detection. Hydrographic mapping is the only method currently available to measure sub-aqueous topography. Hydrographic technology is used in the Grand Canyon primarily to measure changes in the river channel. The primary changes that occur are due to the movement of sediment. These changes are monitored by hydro-acoustic measurements that are accurately positioned over the course of the river channel. The hydrographic data collection method is designed to develop required monitoring and research products such as topographic maps, digital terrain models, sediment aggregation and degradation, hydrologic stage discharge modeling, and cross-section analysis. These products support the following projects: system wide channel mapping, fine-grained sediment storage, coarse-grained sediment, streamflow and fine-grained sediment transport, modeling reach-averaged sand bar evolution, and aquatic bio-monitoring. The hydrographic channel-mapping project is a five-year project that began in FY2000 and is scheduled to be complete in FY2004.

Budget: \$130,260

SURVEY OPERATIONS					
Description		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)					
Surveyor	0.14	33,200	4,300	11,480	12,460
Surveying Technician	0.30	37,050	14,250	17,700	13,800
Survey Student	1.00	20,000	17,000	12,000	17,000
Travel		2,000	2,000	5,000	5,000
Services			6,000	4,000	4,000
Supplies and Materials		6,000	27,000	27,000	78,000
TOTAL		98,250	70,550	77,180	130,260

Appropriations - Requested Funding	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Equipment		50,000	45,000	
TOTAL	0	50,000	45,000	0

F.5. Decision Support System

GCMRC provides objective, scientific information to the AMWG for use in making recommendations to the Secretary of the Interior regarding the effects of dam operations on the Colorado River ecosystem (CRE). In support of this effort, GCMRC has developed: (1) a conceptual (i.e., computer) model of the CRE, (2) a detailed map of the CRE and GIS overlays for the CRE. In addition, it is anticipated that in FY 2002, significant progress will be made in the development of an integrated Oracle database of scientific information pertaining to the CRE. Missing from this equation is the decision-support system (DSS) overlay that can act to integrate these various efforts and support the AMWG in examining various management actions / policy changes that they may wish to recommend to the Secretary. The decision support system development and implementation is a three to five year project that will begin in FY2003 and continue until FY2005-2007 depending on contracting needs. In FY2004 activities of this project will focus on:

- Conducting needs assessment
- Evaluating existing tools and approaches

Budget: \$150,000

DECISION SUPPORT SYSTEM Appropriations - Requested Funding	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
System Administration				
Decision Support System			150,000	150,000
TOTAL	0	0	150,000	150,000

F.6. Systems Administration

The GCMRC computing environment is a complex system of servers, workstations, laptops, printers, plotters, modems, routers, hubs, switches, copy machines, FAX's, and telecommunications equipment networked together using 100baseT networking media. Most of the computers are PCs running the Windows NT/2000 operating system. In addition, over 50 applications are utilized by GCMRC scientists and support personnel in carrying out the collective mission of the GCMRC. Applications are primarily off-the-shelf products but in many cases are highly specialized. It is anticipated that World Wide Web development and maintenance will be moved to within this program in FY2004.

Ongoing activities are:

- Administering GCMRC network, computers, and software
- Administering the GCMRC website
- Troubleshooting day-to-day computer problems
- Upgrading existing computing infrastructure and provide new functionality
- Creating improved web content

Budget: \$261,450

DESCRIPTION		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)					
IT Program Manager	0.05		4,450	4,200	4,450
Systems Administrator	1.00	61,000	57,000	74,000	80,000
Travel			2,500	4,000	4,000
Services			3,500	5,000	5,000
Supplies and Materials		120,000	25,000	33,000	35,000
Equipment			80,000	130,000	133,000
TOTAL		181,000	172,450	250,200	261,450

F.7. Aerial Photography

GCMRC annually collects digital imagery and topography data in support of biological, cultural, and physical resource monitoring projects. These data sets are utilized for multiple monitoring and research projects and provide spatial integration of multiple resource parameters. Digital imagery and topography data sets include orthorectified digital imagery, orthorectified multispectral imagery, LIDAR, and photogrammetry products. These data sets enable GCMRC to expand the coverage of resource monitoring projects in the CRE in a more cost-effective manner while in many cases reducing the environmental impact. Resource monitoring in the CRE is inherently difficult and expensive due to the remote nature of the canyon environment. Aerial imagery, LIDAR, and photogrammetry provide alternative methods of collecting monitoring data over large areas with reduced numbers of expensive and invasive river trips.

The GCMRC has been collecting annual aerial photography of the CRE for over 20 years in support of research and monitoring activities related to the operations of the Glen Canyon dam. Until recently, the product delivered has been nine-by-nine inch contact prints of black-and-white or color-infrared film at an approximate scale of 1/4800. Photographs have been delivered without any rectification or geopositioning information. While useful for many past monitoring and research activities in the CRE,

these products are largely being supplanted by high-resolution, calibrated, multispectral digital products that include pointing and positioning parameters that allow cost-effective rectification and geopositioning. These products have much more utility, and have resulted in increased productivity, capability, and efficiency in almost all resource programs. In addition these data sets allow improved image analysis using automated computerized techniques. Simultaneous acquisition of LIDAR or photogrammetric data provides high accuracy topographic information in areas where terrestrial volume information is desired.

The GCMRC remote sensing initiative evaluated new technologies to support resource monitoring in the CRE during 2000 – 2002. Over 106 airborne and spaceborne sensors and two waterborne sensors were considered. Many of these sensors were eliminated based upon the demanding data specifications required by the resource monitoring programs. Ten sensors, or sensor configurations, were field tested for suitability in the CRE. The following applications of remotely sensed data products have been identified from the initiative:

Orthorectified digital imagery

- Georeferencing of historical and future scientific data
- Monitoring terrestrial, fine grained sediment movement and storage, e.g., sand bars and river terraces
- Monitoring terrestrial, coarse-grained sediment changes, e.g., cobble bars and debris fans
- Monitoring size and quality of camping beaches throughout the corridor
- Development of a Colorado River centerline
- Development of an accurate river guide in terms of mileage and waters edge at specific stages
- Potentially, monitoring effects of runoff and dam releases on archeological structures
- Potentially, mapping/monitoring aquatic food base and water quality throughout the corridor

Multispectral digital imagery

- Mapping terrestrial vegetation types throughout the corridor at five-year intervals and annual monitoring of terrestrial vegetation habitat as in selected reaches
- Monitoring aquatic flux and storage of sediment within the main channel
- Surface water temperature
- Channel morphology
- Potentially, suspended sediment monitoring

LIDAR and photogrammetry

- Topographic basemaps
- Orthorectification of imagery
- Monitoring terrestrial, fine grained sediment movement and storage, e.g., sand bars and river terraces
- Monitoring terrestrial, coarse grained sediment changes, e.g., cobble bars and debris fans
- Characterizing and monitoring terrestrial vegetation habitats for birds and insects
- 3-d visualization
- Overflight mission planning

The collection of aerial imagery, LIDAR, and photogrammetry is accomplished through a contract utilizing a request for proposal process. Imagery, LIDAR, and photogrammetry needs of the science programs are determined annually in advance and incorporated into the statement of work from which an RFP will be generated. Currently aerial overflights are scheduled to collect imagery, LIDAR, and photogrammetry over the Memorial Day weekend when power demand is low to reduce the impact on power utilities. Data sets are collected at steady dam release of either 8,000 or 15,000 cfs depending on the inflow into Lake Powell to provide spatial and temporal comparability.

Budget: \$514,380

AERIAL PHOTOGRAPHY				
Description	FY-2001	FY-2003	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)				
IT Program Manager 0.22			18,480	19,580
Contracts				
Aerial Photography			282,000	316,000
Lidar			130,000	134,000
Technical Support Services				
Survey 0.10	8,300	8,600	8,200	8,900
GIS Assistant 0.20				10,400
GIS Specialist 0.34	6,100	12,000	16,000	25,500
TOTAL	14,400	20,600	454,680	514,380

DESCRIPTION	FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Aerial Photography				
Contracts		135,000	68,000	0
TOTAL	0	135,000	68,000	0

F.8. Logistics

GCMRC provides all logistical support for monitoring and research projects conducted by contracted Principal Investigators (PIs) whose work is administered by GCMRC Program Managers in physical, biological and social-cultural resource programs. GCMRC staff initiate some of their own in-house scientific activities, which require logistical support, including; the Integrated Water Quality Program, administrative trips for groups such as the TWG, AMWG, Science Advisors and program PEP panels. The GCMRC also supports logistical needs for the Bureau of Reclamation's activities conducted by Native American groups under the Programmatic Agreement program and activities conducted to meet Reclamation's needs concerning endangered species. In addition, GCMRC provides logistics support for any contingency plans or experimental floods.

To meet these responsibilities, the GCMRC Logistics Staff, consisting of a full time Logistical Coordinator and Warehouse Manager and a seasonally employed Warehouse Assistant, facilitates support of approximately 35-45 downriver trips annually

on the Colorado River through Grand Canyon. These trips range from four to thirty-six people in size, five to twenty-one days in length, and are comprised of a variety of combinations of oar and motor-powered boats. Additionally, logistical support is provided for research activities on the Glen Canyon reach of the Colorado River (Glen Canyon Dam to Lees Ferry), the Little Colorado River and occasionally Lake Powell and Lake Mead.

The GCMRC uses a “partial in-house” method of supporting trips in which government-owned boats and river logistical equipment are used in conjunction with two contracted vendors who supply Boat Operators. Food packs and river put-in and take-out transportation are generally provided in-house but may alternatively be supplied by one of three contracted vendors when needs exceed GCMRC resources. The “in-house” approach allows better oversight over trip particulars that most influence cost (number of boats and Boat Operators, food packs, shuttle services) and ultimately gives the GCMRC greater control over trip costs than other support strategies used in past years.

In addition, the GCMRC Logistics Coordinator and Program Managers are able to accommodate scientists who may be leaders in their field, but new to the Colorado River Ecosystem. Effective communication with PIs, and sensitivity to and awareness of the challenges they face in implementing their studies, enable the GCMRC to offer more tailored (and therefore more cost-effective and productive) logistical support than any subcontracted vendor. Retaining more control over the process of supporting trips also facilitates better compliance with NPS regulations, allows greater control over issues sensitive to the recreational river community and enables the GCMRC to match PIs with the best Boat Operators for their particular study.

Trip planning begins in the fall when the Logistics Coordinator in cooperation with contracted PIs and GCMRC Program Managers and staff generate a draft schedule of trips for the next fiscal year. The schedule includes; launch and take-out dates, numbers of required personnel and specific boat and boat operator needs for each trip. Individual trip itineraries are firmed up as soon thereafter as possible, and *must* be finalized 60 days prior to launch date and submitted to the Logistics Coordinator in order to meet the 45 day deadline for submitting launch permit application packets for each trip to the GCNP/NPS. Arrangements for operations services (Logistical and Technical Boat Operators) and support services (foodpacks, put-in/take-out transportation, equipment rentals) are made two to four weeks prior to each trip launch date.

The Logistics Budget is distributed to GCMRC projects based on a formula proportional to use of services. The formula takes into account contract costs, trip size and length, and a percentage of operating expenses, salaries and permitting.

Budget: \$825,000 (Distributed to Science Projects)

LOGISTICS DESCRIPTION		FY-2001	FY-2002	FY-2003	FY-2004
Salary (includes benefits)					
Logistics Operations Specialist	1.0	55,000	51,300	65,000	67,000
Logistics Assistant	1.0	30,000	30000	36000	37,000
Logistics SummerAid	1.0		17000	20000	17,000
Travel					
Contracts					
Logistics Contracts*		525,000	500000	361000	365,000
Permitting Contract		54,000	57000	72000	76,000
Services					
Helicopter Support		30,000	31000	36000	36,000
Emergency Evacuation		6,000	6000	5000	5,000
Supplies and Materials					
Logistics Support Supplies & Expenses*		5,000	5000	179000	190,000
Equipment		30,000	65,000	31,000	32,000
Subtotal all logistics costs		735,000	762,300	805,000	825,000
Allocation to Projects		437,000	437,000	805,000	825,000
TOTAL		298,000	325,300	0	0

* More logistics operations are being performed in-house as opposed to using contractors.

GCMRC BUDGET

The total FY2004 budget for the GCMRC is \$8,105,000. This includes \$7,111,000 from AMP – Power Revenues, \$309,000 from the Bureau of Reclamation Water Quality fund; and \$685,000 requested from federal appropriations.

Program Schedule

The tentative schedule for implementation of the FY 2004 Monitoring and Research Annual Plan is as follows:

January, 2002	AMWG review of FY 2004 Annual Plan and recommendations for implementation. AMWG review and approval of revised Information Needs
March 2002	Review of FY 2001 program accomplishments and the revised “State of the Colorado River Ecosystem Resources” report with the TWG.
April 2002	First Progress Report due on FY 2002 program activities
April-May 2002	Release of RFPs for FY 2004
July 2002	Second Progress Report due on FY 2004 program activities
July 2002	Receipt of Proposals for FY 2002 program
August 2002	Panel Review of FY 2004 Proposals
September 2002	Notification of Intent for FY 2004 Awards
September 2002	Draft Final Reports due on FY 2002 program activities
Sept./Oct. 2002	FY 2004 Awards
October 2002	Develop Logistics Plan for FY 2004 program
October 2002	Draft FY 2004 Annual Plan for review by TWG/AMWG
December 2002	Final Reports on FY 2002 programs with all contract deliverables
January 2004	AMWG review of FY 2005 Annual Plan and recommendations for implementation

REFERENCES CITED

- Arizona Game and Fish Department. 2001. Salmonid population size in the Colorado River, Grand Canyon, Arizona. Fishery Fact Sheet, Arizona Game and Fish Department, Phoenix, AZ.
- Austin, D., I. Bullets, B. Drye. 2000. Educational Outreach Program for Southern Paiute Cultural Resources along the Colorado River in the Grand Canyon. Submitted to the Grand Canyon Monitoring and Research Center.
- Balsom, J.R. 1996. Mitigation and monitoring of cultural resources in response to the experimental habitat building flow in Glen and Grand Canyons.
- Begay, R. M. 2001. 2000 Navajo Nation River Trip. Submitted to Bureau of Reclamation.
- Coggins, L. and C. Walters. 2001. Trends in the recruitment and abundance of humpback chub (*Gila cypha*) in the Little Colorado River. American Fisheries Society Meeting Abstract.
- Culver, D.A., B.L. Kerans, M. Liermann, and G.R. Wilde. 2000. Final Report of the Lees Ferry Rainbow Trout Monitoring Peer Review Panel. Submitted to Grand Canyon Monitoring and Research Center, Flagstaff, AZ 86001.
- Doelle, W., et al. 2000. Final Report: Cultural Resource Program Assessment. Protocol Evaluation Panel submitted to Grand Canyon Monitoring and Research Center, Flagstaff, AZ.
- Dongoske, K.E. 2001. Annual Report on the Hopi Tribe's Involvement in the Glen Canyon Dam Adaptive Management Program and the Programmatic Agreement Regarding Historic Properties. Submitted to the Bureau of Reclamation.
- Drye, B., I. Bullets, A. Phillips III, T. Snow, G. Stanfield. 2001. 200a southern paiute Consortium Colorado River Corridor Resource Evaluation Program: Annual Report of Activities. Submitted to Bureau of Reclamation.
- Gorman O.T., R.G. Bramblett. 1998. Monitoring and studies of native fishes of the Colorado River ecosystem in Grand Canyon, Arizona. US Fish and Wildlife Service submitted to Grand Canyon Monitoring and Research Center, Flagstaff, AZ.
- Hazel J., M. Kaplinski, R. Parnell, M. Manone, Alan Dale. 1999. Topographic and Bathymetric Changes at Thirty-three Long-Term Study Sites. American Geophysical Union Monograph #110, pages 161-184.

- Hazel J., M. Kaplinski, R. Parnell, M. Manone. 2001. Monitoring the Effects of the Spring 2000 Habitat maintenance Flow on Colorado River Ecosystem Sand Bars. Northern Arizona University, Department of Geology Sand Bar Studies Fact Sheet.
- Hereford, R. 1993. Description of Map Units and Discussion to accompany Map showing Surficial Geology and Geomorphology of the Palisades Creek Archeologic Area, Grand Canyon National Park, Arizona. U.S. Geological Survey (U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 93-553). Flagstaff, AZ.
- Hereford, R., H. C. Fairley, K. S. Thompson and J. R. Balsom. 1993. Surficial Geology, Geomorphology and Erosion of Archeologic Sites along the Colorado River, Eastern Grand Canyon, Grand Canyon National Park, Arizona. Grand Canyon National Park in cooperation with the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, Glen Canyon Environmental Studies (U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 93-517). Flagstaff, AZ.
- Hereford, R., K. S. Thompson, K. J. Burke and H. C. Fairley. 1995. Late Holocene Debris Fans and Alluvial Chronology of the Colorado River, Eastern Grand Canyon, AZ. U.S. Geological Survey (U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 95-57). Flagstaff, AZ.
- Hereford, R., K. J. Burke and K. S. Thompson. 1996. Description of Map Units and Discussion to Accompany Map Showing Quarternary Geology and Geomorphology of the Nankoweap Rapids area, Marble Canyon, Arizona. U.S. Geological Survey (U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 96-502). Flagstaff, AZ.
- Kaplinski, M., J. Hazel, R. Parnell, M. Manone, M. Gonzales. 2000. Evaluation of Hydrographic Survey Techniques Used for Channel Mapping by the GCMRC in the Colorado River Ecosystem, Grand Canyon, AZ. Unpublished report.
- Kearsley, L. H. 1994. Effects of Glen Canyon Dam on Colorado River sand deposits used as campsites in Grand Canyon National Park, USA. *Regulated Rivers: Research and Management*, v9, 137-149.
- Kearsley, L. H., R. D. Quartaroli and M. J. C. Kearsley. 1999. Changes in the number and size of campsites as determined by inventory and measurement in The Controlled Flood in Grand Canyon. *Geophysical Monograph 110*, American Geophysical Union.
- Kearsley, L. H. 1994. Effects of Glen Canyon Dam on Colorado River sand deposits used as campsites in Grand Canyon National Park, USA. *Regulated Rivers: Research and Management*, v9, 137-149.

- Kearsley, L. H. 1995. Monitoring the effects of interim flows on campsite size along the Colorado River in Grand Canyon National Park (final report). Grand Canyon National Park Division of Resource Management, National Park Service. In cooperation with USDOJ Bureau of Reclamation, Glen Canyon Environmental Studies, Cooperative Agreement CA8022-8-0002.
- Kearsley, L. H., R. D. Quartaroli and M. J. C. Kearsley. 1999. Changes in the number and size of campsites as determined by inventory and measurement in The Controlled Flood in Grand Canyon. Geophysical Monograph 110, American Geophysical Union.
- Kearsley, M.J.C, and T.J. Ayers. 2001. Review assessment and recommendations regarding terrestrial riparian vegetation monitoring in the Colorado River corridor of Grand Canyon. Submitted to Grand Canyon Monitoring and Research Center, Flagstaff, AZ 86001.
- Kunde, J.L., L. Leap, N. B. Andrews. 2001. Draft Annual report, FY 2001. River Corridor Monitoring Project No. 70, Grand Canyon National Park and Northern Arizona University. Cooperative Agreement No. CA 8210-97-002.
- Lomaomvaya, M. , T.J. Ferguson, M. Yeatts. 2001. Ongtuvqava Sakwtala: Hopi Ethnobotany in the Grand Canyon. Submitted to the Grand Canyon Monitoring and Research Center.
- Melis, T.S. 1997, Geomorphology of debris flows and alluvial fans in Grand Canyon National Park and their influence on the Colorado River below Glen Canyon Dam, Arizona: Ph.D. dissertation, 490 p. University of Arizona, Tucson.
- Melis, T. S., R. H. Webb, P. G. Griffiths, and T. W. Wise. 1995. Magnitude and frequency data for historic debris flows in Grand Canyon National Park and vicinity, Arizona: U.S. Geological Survey Water Resources Investigation Report 94-4214, 285p.
- Meretsky, V. J. and D. L. Wegner. 1998. Annual report on monitoring of Kanab ambersonail at Vasey's Paradise. SWCA, Environmental Consultants, Inc., submitted to Grand Canyon Monitoring and Research Center, Flagstaff, AZ.
- Neal, L. A., D. Gilpin, L. Jonas and J.H. Ballagh. 2000. Cultural Resources Data Synthesis Within the Colorado River Corridor, Grand Canyon National Park and Glen Canyon National Recreation Area, Arizona. SWCA, Environmental Consultants, Inc., submitted to Grand Canyon Monitoring and Research Center, Flagstaff, AZ.
- Rubin, D.M., D.J. Topping, J.C. Schmidt, J. Hazel, M. Kaplinski, and T.S. Melis. (in press). Recent sediment studies refute Glen Canyon Dam EIS hypothesis: EOS, American Geophysical Union, Washington, D.C.

- Speas, D.W., C. Walters, T. McKinney, B. Persons. 2001. Population biology of rainbow trout in the Lees Ferry tailwater under varied flow regimes. American Fisheries Society Meeting Abstract.
- Spence, J. 2001. The riparian and aquatic bird communities along the Colorado River from Glen Canyon Dam to Lake Mead, 1996-2000. Partial Draft report submitted to Grand Canyon Monitoring and Research Center, Flagstaff, AZ 86001.
- Stevens, L.E., P. Keim and M. Miller. 2000. Morphological and genetic relatedness among succinieid landsnails in the United States and Canada, with emphasis on the endangered Kanab ambersnail (*Oxyloma haydeni kanabensis*). Final report submitted to Grand Canyon Monitoring and Research Center, Flagstaff, AZ 86001.
- Stewart, W., et al. 2000. Preferences of recreation user groups of the Colorado River in Grand Canyon. University of Illinois, Carbondale, submitted to Grand Canyon Monitoring and Research Center, Flagstaff, AZ.
- Thompson, K. S., A. R. Potochnik, R. Ryel, G. O'Brien, L. A. Neal. 2000. Development of a geomorphic model to predict erosion of pre-dam Colorado River terraces containing archaeological resources. SWCA, Environmental Consultants, Inc., submitted to Grand Canyon Monitoring and Research Center, Flagstaff, AZ.
- Webb, R. H., T.S. Melis, P. G. Griffiths, and J. G. Elliot. 1999. Reworking of aggraded debris fans: *in* R. H. Webb, J. C. Schmidt, G. R. Marzolf, and R. A. Valdez (editors): The Controlled Flood in Grand Canyon, p. 37-52, American Geophysical Union Monograph 110, Washington.
- Wiele, S.M. and M. Franseen. 2000. Modeling of Mainstem flow and sediment dynamics at selected cultural resource locations. Draft report, under review.
- Yard, H. and N. Cobb. 2001 Bottom-up structuring of avian communities in the Grand Canyon: In search of arthropod indicators. Project report 2000. Submitted to Grand Canyon Monitoring and Research Center, Flagstaff, AZ 86001.

APPENDIX ONE

AMWG VISION AND MISSION

(Adopted July 6, 2000)

The Grand Canyon is a homeland for some, sacred to many, and a national treasure for all. In honor of past generations, and on behalf of those of the present and future, we envision an ecosystem where the resources and natural processes are in harmony under a stewardship worthy of the Grand Canyon.

We advise the Secretary of the Interior on how best to protect, mitigate adverse impacts to, and improve the integrity of the Colorado River ecosystem affected by Glen Canyon Dam, including natural biological diversity (emphasizing native biodiversity), traditional cultural properties, spiritual values, and cultural, physical, and recreational resources through the operation of Glen Canyon Dam and other means.

We do so in keeping with the federal trust responsibilities to Indian tribes, in compliance with applicable federal, state, and tribal laws, including the water delivery obligations of the Law of the River, and with due consideration to the economic value of power resources.

This will be accomplished through our long-term partnership utilizing the best available scientific and other information through an adaptive ecosystem management process.

AMWG PRINCIPLES

The Glen Canyon Dam Adaptive Management Work Group embraces the following Principles. They guided development of the Goals and Objectives for the Glen Canyon Dam Adaptive Management Program (GCDAMP). These Principles are:

1. The Goals represent a set of desired outcomes that together will accomplish our Vision and achieve the purpose of the Grand Canyon Protection Act. Some of the Objectives and actions that fall under these Goals may not be the responsibility of the GCDAMP, and may be funded by other sources, but are included here for completeness.
2. The construction of Glen Canyon Dam and the introduction of non-native species have irreversibly changed the Colorado River ecosystem.
3. Much remains unknown about the Colorado River ecosystem below Glen Canyon Dam and how to achieve GCDAMP ecosystem Goals.
4. The Colorado River ecosystem is a managed ecosystem. An ecosystem management approach, in lieu of an issues, species, or resources approach, will

- guide our efforts. Management efforts will prevent any further human-induced extirpation or extinction of native species.
5. An adaptive management approach will be used to achieve GCDAMP ecosystem Goals, through experimentation and monitoring, to meet the intent of the Grand Canyon Protection Act, the Environmental Impact Statement, and the Record of Decision.
 6. Dam operations and management actions will be tried that attempt to return ecosystem patterns and processes to their range of natural variability. When this is not appropriate, experiments will be conducted to test other approaches.
 7. Because management actions to achieve a goal may benefit one resource or value and adversely affect another, those action alternatives that benefit all resources and values will be pursued first. When this is not possible, actions that have a neutral impact, or as a last resort, actions that minimize negative impacts on other resources will be pursued, consistent with the final Glen Canyon Dam Environmental Impact Statement and the Record of Decision.
 8. Recognizing the diverse perspectives and spiritual values of the stakeholders, the unique aesthetic value of the Grand Canyon will be respected and enhanced.
 9. Recognizing the diverse perspectives and spiritual values of the stakeholders, the unique aesthetic value of the Grand Canyon will be respected and enhanced.

AMWG MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES

Goal 1. Protect or improve the aquatic foodbase so that it will support viable populations of desired species at higher trophic levels.

M.O. 1.1 Maintain or attain primary producers: (algae, macrophytes, diatoms) in the Glen Canyon Reach.

M.O. 1.2 Maintain or attain benthic invertebrates in the Glen Canyon Reach

M.O. 1.3 Maintain or attain primary producers (algae, macrophytes, diatoms) in the mainstem and tributaries (to the extent primary producers in the tributaries are influenced by dam operations) below the Paria.

M.O. 1.4 Maintain or attain benthic invertebrates in the mainstem and tributaries (to the extent benthic invertebrates in the tributaries are influenced by dam operations) below the Paria.

M.O. 1.5 Maintain or attain drift (Diptera, CPOM, FPOM, DOC) in the mainstem and tributaries (to the extent drift in the tributaries is influenced by dam operations).

Goal 2. Maintain or attain viable populations of existing native fish, remove jeopardy for humpback chub and razorback sucker, and prevent adverse modification to associated critical habitat.

M.O. 2.1 Maintain or attain humpback chub (>150 mm) abundance in the LCR and other aggregations at appropriate target levels for viable populations and to remove jeopardy.

M.O. 2.2 Maintain or attain HBC (51-150mm) year class strength in the LCR and other aggregations at appropriate target levels for viable populations and to remove jeopardy.

M.O. 2.3 Maintain or attain HBC (>200mm) recruiting adults in the LCR and other aggregations at appropriate target levels for viable populations and to remove jeopardy.

M.O. 2.4 Establish viable HBC spawning aggregations in the CRE below GCD to remove jeopardy.

M.O. 2.5 Attain HBC and other native fish condition and disease/parasite numbers in LCR and other aggregations at an appropriate target level for viable populations and to remove jeopardy.

M.O. 2.6 Reduce native fish mortality due to non-native fish predation as a percentage of overall mortality in the LCR and mainstem to increase native fish recruitment.

M.O. 2.7 Attain Razorback sucker abundance in the CRE below GCD.

M.O. 2.8 Maintain (FMS, BHS and SPD) abundance and distribution in the CRE below GCD for viable populations.

Goal 3. Restore populations of extirpated species, as feasible and advisable.

M.O. 3.1 Restore Colorado pikeminnow, bonytail, and roundtail chub, and river otter abundances in the CRE as feasible and advisable.

Goal 4. Maintain a wild reproducing population of rainbow trout above the Paria River, to the extent practicable and consistent with the maintenance of viable populations of native fish.

M.O. 4.1 Maintain or attain RBT abundance, proportional stock density, length at age, condition, spawning habitat, natural recruitment, and prevent or control whirling disease and other parasitic infections.

M.O. 4.2 Limit Lees Ferry RBT distribution below the Paria River of the CRE to reduce competition or predation on downstream native fish.

Goal 5. Maintain or attain viable populations of Kanab ambersnail.

M.O. 5.1 Attain and maintain KAS population at Vasey's Paradise from the current level to the target level.

M.O. 5.2 Maintain KAS habitat at Vasey's Paradise from the current level to the target level.

Goal 6. Protect or improve the biotic riparian and spring communities, including T&E species and their critical habitat.

M.O. 6.1 Maintain marsh community abundance, composition and area in the CRE in such a manner that native species are not lost.

M.O. 6.2 Maintain NHWZ community patch number and distribution, composition and area to be no lower than values estimated for 1984.

M.O. 6.3 Maintain OHWZ community abundance, composition and distribution in the CRE.

M.O. 6.4 Maintain sand beach community abundance, composition and distribution in the CRE from 1984 (Is this the right benchmark year?)

M.O. 6.5 Reduce invasive non-native species abundance and distribution.

M.O. 6.6 Maintain spring and seep habitat.

M.O. 6.7 Maintain riparian habitat in the CRE capable of supporting Southwest Willow Flycatcher.

Goal 7. Establish water temperature, quality and flow dynamics to achieve GCDAMP ecosystem goals.

M.O. 7.1 Attain water temperature ranges and seasonal variability in the mainstem for biological resources (e.g., native fish, foodbase and trout).

M.O. 7.2 Maintain water quality in the mainstem of the CRE.

M.O. 7.3 Maintain flow dynamics associated with power plant operations, BHBF and habitat maintenance flows.

Goal 8: Maintain or attain levels of sediment storage within the main channel and along shorelines to achieve GCDAMP ecosystem goals.

M.O. 8.1 Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution in the main channel below 5,000 cfs

M.O. 8.2 Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution within channel margins (not eddies) from 5,000 to 25,000 cfs

M.O. 8.3 Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution, within eddies below 5,000 cfs

M.O. 8.4 Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution within eddies between 5,000 to 25,000 cfs

M.O. 8.5 Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution, shorelines between 25,000 cfs and uppermost effects of maximum dam release

M.O. 8.6 Maintain or attain coarse sediment (greater than 2mm) abundance, grain-size and distribution throughout the Colorado River Ecosystem needed to achieve other resource goals

GOAL 9: Maintain or improve the quality of recreational experiences for users of the Colorado River Ecosystem, within the framework of GCDAMP ecosystem goals.

M.O. 9.1 Maintain or improve the quality and range of opportunities in Glen and Grand Canyons within the capacity of the Colorado River Ecosystem to absorb visitor impacts consistent with the NPS and tribal river corridor Management Plans.

M.O. 9.2 Maintain or improve the quality and range of opportunities in Glen and Grand Canyons in consideration of visitor safety, and the inherent risk of river-related recreational activities.

M.O. 9.3 Increase the size, quality and distribution of camping beaches in critical and non-critical reaches in the mainstem within the capacity of the Colorado River Ecosystem to absorb visitor impacts consistent with NPS and tribal river corridor Management Plans.

M.O. 9.4 Maintain or enhance the wilderness experience in the CRE in consideration of existing management plans.

M.O. 9.5 Maintain or enhance visitor experiences as a result of GCDAMP research and monitoring activities.

Goal 10: Maintain power production capacity and energy generation, and increase where feasible and advisable, within the framework of GCDAMP ecosystem goals.

M.O. 10.1 Maintain or increase power with respect to marketable capacity and energy at Glen Canyon dam

M.O. 10.2 Maintain or increase power within the existing emergency criteria for Western Area Power Administration systems.

M.O. 10.3 Maintain or increase power within the existing emergency criteria for the western interconnected electrical system.

M.O. 10.4 Maintain or increase power regulation at Glen Canyon dam.

Goal 11: Preserve, protect, manage and treat cultural resources for the inspiration and benefit of past, present and future generations.

M.O. 11.1 Preserve the National Register integrity of register-eligible properties in the area of potential effect via protection, management, and/or treatment (e.g., data recovery) for the purpose of federal agency compliance with NHPA, and AMP and AMWG compliance with GCPA.

M.O. 11.2 Preserve resource integrity and cultural values of traditionally important resources within the Colorado River Ecosystem.

M.O. 11.3 Protect and maintain physical access to traditional cultural resources through meaningful consultation on AMP activities that might restrict or block physical access by Native American religious and traditional practitioners.

Goal 12: Maintain a high quality monitoring, research, and adaptive management program.

M.O. 12.1 Maintain or attain socio-economic data about tribal and spiritual values for adequate decision-making.

M.O. 12.2: Attain or improve monitoring and research programs to achieve the appropriate scale and sampling design needed to support science-based adaptive management recommendations.

M.O. 12.3 Integrate and synthesize cultural and environmental data to increase an understanding of the past and for ongoing interactions of humans within the CRE.

M.O. 12.4 Attain or maintain an integrated and synthesized “ecosystem-science”-based adaptive management program.

M.O. 12.4a Maintain or attain the participation of externally-funded investigators

M.O. 12.5 Foster effective two-way communication between scientists, external reviewers, managers, decision-makers and the public.

M.O. 12.5a Build AMP public support through effective public outreach.

M.O. 12.5b Attain and maintain effective communication and coordination with other resource management programs in the Colorado River basin to ensure inclusion of their values and perspectives into the AMP and vice versa.

M.O. 12.6 Attain and maintain an effective adaptive management program, composed of informed stakeholders.

M.O. 12.6a Maintain or attain funding from multiple sources

M.O. 12.7 Attain and maintain effective tribal consultation to ensure inclusion of tribal values and perspectives into the AMP.

M.O. 12.8 Attain and maintain tribal participation in the AMP research and long-term monitoring activities.

M.O. 12.9 Conduct experimental flows and other management actions for flow dynamics in the mainstem to gain critical understanding of ecosystem function under different dam operations, e.g., BHBF's, HMF's, biological opinion flows, and financial exception criteria flows.

M.O. 12.10 Maintain or attain adequate funding from power revenues, foundations and corporations, appropriations, and State agencies to meet AMP program goals.

M.O. 12.11 Maintain or attain participation from externally funded investigators that can help address the information needs and meet AMP program goals.

APPENDIX TWO

FY2004 PROJECT TITLES AND ASSOCIATED MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES.

A. TERRESTRIAL ECOSYSTEM ACTIVITIES
Project Title and ID: A.1. Terrestrial Ecosystem Monitoring
Status: Ongoing, originally initiated in FY2001.
MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVE
<p>MO 6.1: Maintain marsh community abundance, composition and area in the CRE in such a manner that native species are not lost.</p> <p>MO 6.2: Maintain NHWZ community patch number and distribution, composition and area to be no lower than values estimated for 1984.</p> <p>MO 6.3: Maintain OHWZ community abundance, composition and distribution in the CRE.</p> <p>MO 6.4: Maintain sand beach community abundance, composition and distribution in the CRE from 1984 (Is this the right benchmark year?)</p> <p>MO 6.5: Reduce invasive non-native species abundance and distribution.</p> <p>MO 6.7: Maintain riparian habitat in the CRE capable of supporting Southwest Willow Flycatcher.</p>
Project Title and ID: A.1. Terrestrial Ecosystem Monitoring-Cultural Component – Tribal Participation.
Status: Ongoing, originally initiated in FY 2001
MO 11.2: Preserve resource integrity and cultural values of traditionally important resources within the Colorado River Ecosystem.
Project Title and ID: A.2. Monitoring Kanab Ambersnail and Habitat at Vasey’s Paradise
Status: Ongoing.
<p>MO 5.1: Attain and maintain KAS population at Vasey’s Paradise from the current level to the target level.</p> <p>MO 5.2: Maintain KAS habitat at Vasey’s Paradise from the current level to the target level.</p>
Project Title and ID: A.3. New research in terrestrial ecosystems
Status: New for FY2002

Project Title and ID: A.4. Mapping Holocene terraces
Status: Ongoing, final year. Initiated in FY 2002.
<p><u>MO 11.1:</u> Preserve the National Register integrity of register-eligible properties in the area of potential effect via protection, management, and/or treatment (e.g., data recovery for the purpose of federal agency compliance with NHPA, and AMP and AMWG compliance with GCPA).</p> <p><u>MO 11.2:</u> Preserve resource integrity and cultural values of traditionally important resources within the Colorado River Ecosystem.</p>
Project Title and ID: A.5. Cultural data base plan implementation
Status: Continuation of project funded in FY 2002.
<p><u>MO 11.1:</u> Preserve the National Register integrity of register-eligible properties in the area of potential effect via protection, management, and/or treatment (e.g., data recovery for the purpose of federal agency compliance with NHPA, and AMP and AMWG compliance with GCPA).</p>
Project Title and ID: A.6. Kanab Ambersnail Taxonomy
Status: New Project.
<p><u>MO 5.1:</u> Attain and maintain KAS population at Vasey's Paradise from the current level to the target level.</p>

B. AQUATIC ECOSYSTEM ACTIVITIES

Project Title and ID: B.1. & B.2. Monitoring aquatic foodbase and evaluating its quality for utilization

Status: Ongoing. Originally approved and implemented in FY2001.

MO 1.2: Maintain or attain benthic invertebrates in the Glen Canyon Reach.

MO 1.4: Maintain or attain benthic invertebrates in the mainstem and tributaries (to the extent benthic invertebrates in the tributaries are influenced by dam operations) below the Paria.

MO 1.5: Maintain or attain drift (Diptera, CPOM, FPOM, DOC) in the mainstem and tributaries (to the extent drift in the tributaries is influenced by dam operations).

Project Title and ID: B.3. Monitoring of the status and trends of the downstream fish community

Status: Ongoing. Originally approved and implemented in FY2001.

MO 2.1: Maintain or attain humpback chub (>150 mm) abundance in the LCR and other aggregations at appropriate target levels for viable populations and to remove jeopardy.

MO 2.2: Maintain or attain HBC (51-150mm) year class strength in the LCR and other aggregations at appropriate target levels for viable populations and to remove jeopardy.

MO 2.3: Maintain or attain HBC (>200mm) recruiting adults in the LCR and other aggregations at appropriate target levels for viable populations and to remove jeopardy.

MO 2.8: Maintain (FMS, BHS and SPD) abundance and distribution in the CRE below GCD for viable populations.

Project Title and ID: B.4. Monitoring the status and trends of the Lees Ferry Fishery

Status: Ongoing. Originally approved and implemented in FY2001.

MO 4.1: Maintain or attain RBT abundance, proportional stock density, length at age, condition, spawning habitat, natural recruitment, and prevent or control whirling disease and other parasitic infections.

Project Title and ID: B.5. Integrated Water Quality Monitoring: Downstream Activities

Status: Ongoing, initiated in FY 2002.

MO 7.1: Attain water temperature ranges and seasonal variability in the mainstem for biological resources (e.g., native fish, foodbase and trout).

MO 7.2: Maintain water quality in the mainstem of the CRE.

MO 2.6: Reduce native fish mortality due to non-native fish predation as a percentage of overall mortality in the LCR and mainstem to increase native fish recruitment.

Project Title and ID: B.6. Integrated Water Quality Monitoring: Lake Powell
Status: Ongoing.
MOs: There are no management objectives for the Lake Powell Program at this time.
Project Title and ID: B.7. Native and Non-Native Fish Species
Status: New Project (To be provided by Steve Gloss, Program Manager for Aquatic Ecosystem Activities.)
Project Title and ID: B.8. Captive Breeding Program
Status: New Project (To be provided by Steve Gloss, Program Manager for Aquatic Ecosystem Activities.)

C. INTEGRATED TERRESTRIAL AND AQUATIC ECOSYSTEM ACTIVITIES

Project Title and ID: C.1. Long-term monitoring of fine-grained sediment storage throughout the main channel

Status: Ongoing. Originally approved and implemented in FY2001.

MO 8.1: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution in the main channel below 5,000 cfs.

MO 8.2: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution within channel margins (not eddies) from 5,000 to 25,000 cfs.

MO 8.3: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution, within eddies below 5,000 cfs.

MO 8.4: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution within eddies between 5,000 to 25,000 cfs.

MO 8.5: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution, shorelines between 25,000 cfs and uppermost effects of maximum dam release.

MO 8.6: Maintain or attain coarse sediment (greater than 2mm) abundance, grain-size and distribution throughout the Colorado River Ecosystem needed to achieve other resource goals.

Project Title and ID: C.1. Long-term monitoring of fine-grained sediment storage throughout the main channel – Recreational component – monitoring camping beaches

Status: Ongoing.

MO 9.3: Increase the size, quality and distribution of camping beaches in critical and non-critical reaches in the mainstem within the capacity of the Colorado River Ecosystem to absorb visitor impacts consistent with NPS and tribal river corridor Management Plans.

Project Title and ID: C.2. Long-term streamflow and fine sediment transport in the main channel Colorado, Paria and Little Colorado Rivers

Status: Ongoing. Approved and implemented in FY2001 through a sole source award to the USGS.

MO 8.1: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution in the main channel below 5,000 cfs.

MO 8.2: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution within channel margins (not eddies) from 5,000 to 25,000 cfs.

MO 8.3: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution, within eddies below 5,000 cfs.

MO 8.4: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution within eddies between 5,000 to 25,000 cfs.

MO 8.5: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution, shorelines between 25,000 cfs and uppermost effects of maximum dam release.

MO 8.6: Maintain or attain coarse sediment (greater than 2mm) abundance, grain-size and distribution throughout the Colorado River Ecosystem needed to achieve other resource goals.

Project Title and ID: C.3. Long-term monitoring of coarse-sediment inputs, storage and impacts to physical habitats

Status: Ongoing. Originally approved and implemented in FY2001.

MO 8.1: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution in the main channel below 5,000 cfs.

MO 8.2: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution within channel margins (not eddies) from 5,000 to 25,000 cfs.

MO 8.3: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution, within eddies below 5,000 cfs.

MO 8.4: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution within eddies between 5,000 to 25,000 cfs.

MO 8.5: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution, shorelines between 25,000 cfs and uppermost effects of maximum dam release.

MO 8.6: Maintain or attain coarse sediment (greater than 2mm) abundance, grain-size and distribution throughout the Colorado River Ecosystem needed to achieve other resource goals.

Project Title and ID: C.4.A. Modeling reach-averaged sandbar evolution in response to discharge and sediment conditions

Status: Initiated in FY 2002.

MO 8.1: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution in the main channel below 5,000 cfs.

MO 8.2: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution within channel margins (not eddies) from 5,000 to 25,000 cfs.

MO 8.3: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution, within eddies below 5,000 cfs.

MO 8.4: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution within eddies between 5,000 to 25,000 cfs.

MO 8.5: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution, shorelines between 25,000 cfs and uppermost effects of maximum dam release.

MO 8.6: Maintain or attain coarse sediment (greater than 2mm) abundance, grain-size and distribution throughout the Colorado River Ecosystem needed to achieve other resource goals.

Project Title and ID: C.4.B. Development of one-dimensional fine sediment routing model along the main channel

Status: Initiated in FY 2002.

MO 8.1: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution in the main channel below 5,000 cfs.

MO 8.2: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution within channel margins (not eddies) from 5,000 to 25,000 cfs.

MO 8.3: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution, within eddies below 5,000 cfs.

MO 8.4: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution within eddies between 5,000 to 25,000 cfs.

MO 8.5: Maintain or attain fine sediment abundance, grain-size, distribution, shorelines between 25,000 cfs and uppermost effects of maximum dam release.

MO 8.6: Maintain or attain coarse sediment (greater than 2mm) abundance, grain-size and distribution throughout the Colorado River Ecosystem needed to achieve other resource goals.

Project Title and ID: C.5. Development of a CRE Control network

Status: Ongoing. Originally approved and implemented in FY2000.

MOs: Address MOs under Goals.

Goal 1: Protect or improve the aquatic foodbase so that it will support viable populations of desired species at higher trophic levels.

Goal 2: Maintain or attain viable populations of existing native fish, remove jeopardy for humpback chub and razorback sucker, and prevent adverse modification to associated critical habitat.

Goal 4: Maintain a wild reproducing population of rainbow trout above the Paria River, to the extent practicable and consistent with the maintenance of viable populations of native fish.

Goal 5: Maintain or attain viable populations of Kanab ambersnail.

Goal 8: Maintain or attain levels of sediment storage within the main channel and along shorelines to achieve GCDAMP ecosystem goals.

Goal 9: Maintain or improve the quality of recreational experiences for users of the Colorado River Ecosystem, within the framework of GCDAMP ecosystem goals.

Goal 11: Preserve, protect, manage and treat cultural resources for the inspiration and benefit of past, present and future generations.

<p>Project Title and ID: C.6. Development of CRE Hydrographic Mapping Program</p>

<p>Status: Ongoing. Originally approved and implemented in FY2000.</p>

MOs: Address MOs under Goals.

Goal 1: Protect or improve the aquatic foodbase so that it will support viable populations of desired species at higher trophic levels.

Goal 2: Maintain or attain viable populations of existing native fish, remove jeopardy for humpback chub and razorback sucker, and prevent adverse modification to associated critical habitat.

Goal 4: Maintain a wild reproducing population of rainbow trout above the Paria River, to the extent practicable and consistent with the maintenance of viable populations of native fish.

Goal 5: Maintain or attain viable populations of Kanab ambersnail.

Goal 8: Maintain or attain levels of sediment storage within the main channel and along shorelines to achieve GCDAMP ecosystem goals.

Goal 9: Maintain or improve the quality of recreational experiences for users of the Colorado River Ecosystem, within the framework of GCDAMP ecosystem goals.

Goal 11: Preserve, protect, manage and treat cultural resources for the inspiration and benefit of past, present and future generations.

<p>Project Title and ID: C.7. LCR integrated studies</p>

<p>Status: New Project (To be provided by Program Managers)</p>

D. OTHER SCIENCE ACTIVITIES

Project Title and ID: D.1. UNSOLICITED PROPOSAL: Adopt-a-Beach project

Status: Ongoing.

MO 9.3: Increase the size, quality and distribution of camping beaches in critical and non-critical reaches in the mainstem within the capacity of the Colorado River Ecosystem to absorb visitor impacts consistent with NPS and tribal river corridor Management Plans.

Project Title and ID: D.4. Tribal Outreach Activities

Status: New Project.

MO 11.1: Preserve the National Register integrity of register-eligible properties in the area of potential effect via protection, management, and/or treatment (e.g., data recovery for the purpose of federal agency compliance with NHPA, and AMP and AMWG compliance with GCPA).

MO 11.2: Preserve resource integrity and cultural values of traditionally important resources within the Colorado River Ecosystem.

Project Title and ID: D.5. Public Outreach Involvement Plan

Status: New Project.

MO 11.1: Preserve the National Register integrity of register-eligible properties in the area of potential effect via protection, management, and/or treatment (e.g., data recovery for the purpose of federal agency compliance with NHPA, and AMP and AMWG compliance with GCPA).

MO 11.2: Preserve resource integrity and cultural values of traditionally important resources within the Colorado River Ecosystem.

MO 11.3: Protect and maintain physical access to traditional cultural resources through meaningful consultation on AMP activities that might restrict or block physical access by Native American religious and traditional practitioners.

Project Title and ID: D.6. Cultural resource synthesis and status report

Status: New Project.

MO 11.1: Preserve the National Register integrity of register-eligible properties in the area of potential effect via protection, management, and/or treatment (e.g., data recovery for the purpose of federal agency compliance with NHPA, and AMP and AMWG compliance with GCPA).

MO 11.2: Preserve resource integrity and cultural values of traditionally important resources within the Colorado River Ecosystem.

Project Title and ID: D.7. Cultural affiliation study
Status: New Project (To be provided by Ruth Lambert, Program Manager for Cultural Resources)

Project Title and ID: D.8. Experimental flows
Status: New Project (To be provided by Steve Gloss, Program for Aquatic Ecosystem Activities)

APPENDIX THREE

GLEN CANYON DAM ADAPTIVE MANAGEMENT PROGRAM Project Descriptions for Fiscal Year 2004

I. PROGRAM ADMINISTRATION

- A. Adaptive Management Work Group (AMWG). This includes personnel costs required to administer the Adaptive Management Program (AMP), travel funds to reimburse members/alternates for attendance at AMWG, ad hoc, and other meetings, and a facilitation contract for meeting management and/or special ad hoc assignments.
- B. Technical Work Group (TWG). This includes personnel costs needed to administer the TWG, travel funds to reimburse members/alternates for attendance at TWG, ad hoc, and other meetings required in the completion of AMWG/TWG assignments, as well as reimbursement for the TWG Chairperson.
- C. Compliance Documents. This covers funding for preparation of compliance documents for AMP-proposed actions in order to comply with ESA, NEPA, and NHPA.
- D. Contract Administration. These are Reclamation personnel costs needed to administer the AMWG facilitation, TWG Chairperson, and Programmatic Agreement contracts.

II. TRIBAL CONSULTATION

- A. Cooperative Agreements with Tribes. Five tribes with demonstrated interests in effects of Glen Canyon Dam operations on resources of tribal concern will continue to be funded through cooperative agreements. The agreements provide \$80,000 per tribe (or consortium of tribes) annually. Funds cover salary, benefits, travel, and indirect costs to enable one official tribal representative to attend meetings wherein government-to-government consultation occurs on AMP activities, issues, and proposals. Funds also ensure the tribal representative maintain communication within their tribes regarding the AMP.
- B. Tribal Monitoring Trips. Each of the five tribes is allocated \$15,000 to monitor effects of dam operation or other management actions on resources of tribal concern. Tribes report their observations to the AMP and the Secretary. The funds are transferred from Reclamation to the GCMRC to pay for river guides, boats, fuel, food, etc.

III. PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENT

- A-1. To be added.
- A-2. Reclamation Administrative Costs for the PA. A total of \$50,000 is allotted for salary, benefits, travel, and indirect costs of administering the PA program and tribal cooperative agreements.

- A-3. Treatment and Monitoring Implementation. The treatments and monitoring plan will be completed in FY03, so planned actions to resolve adverse effects of dam operations should begin in FY04. Costs are estimated.

IV. EXPERIMENTAL FLOW FUND

The TWG Experimental Flow Fund Ad Hoc Group has developed an integrated program of experimentation that addresses current information needs related to sediment conservation, riparian vegetation management, and Biological Opinion compliance. The Experimental Flow Fund would finance this program. A financial carry-over account has been established in Reclamation for these funds. Funds would be accumulated each year until there is a sufficient account balance to support the scientific objectives. Appropriated dollars are also being requested through the USGS to supplement this fund.

V. GCMRC SCIENTIFIC ACTIVITIES

Scientific Activities. Project descriptions and budget estimates have been built using information from current and draft information needs, recommendations contained in PEP reports, and existing monitoring and research activities that have been funded as multi-year projects. It is expected that as the revision to existing information needs and the AMP Strategic Plan is completed, the details for a given project may be revised. We believe the bottom-line budget figure presented here is a reasonable estimate of the funds needed for FY 2003 given existing information.

Project costs include contract costs, salaries for GCMRC staff, logistics, GIS and survey support, and other operational costs.

- A-1. Monitoring & Inventory of Terrestrial Resources & Tribal Participation: Integrated biological monitoring of vegetation linking birds, foodbase and vegetative structure on reach and river-wide scale, using bird patch size as minimum sampling unit. Also linking hydrology to vegetation composition change and implementing PEP recommended sampling scheme for long-term monitoring of status and trends. New RFP in FY 2004 to include expanded effort in Lower Grand Canyon, downstream of Diamond Creek.
- Tribal Participation: Intended to provide support to participating tribes to work with biologists on terrestrial monitoring to incorporate tribal perspectives within the integrated terrestrial resources monitoring program.
- A-2. Monitoring Kanab Ambersnail: Sampling and estimating population status of snails at Vaseys Paradise. Includes measurement of habitat and refinement of sampling procedures. Logistics support for supplemental population surveys above 100,000 cfs included.
- A-3. Old High Water Zone Research: This project will undertake an evaluation of the vegetation in the Colorado River ecosystem known as the Old High Water Zone (OHWZ). The area represents a unique corridor of vegetation comprised of mesquite and acacia as well as

other species, which developed in the area above the zone of disturbance resulting from periodic high water in the predam period. Whether this community will persist over time, migrate down slope toward the New High Water Zone, senesce, or remain stable will be the focus of this research.

- A-4. Holocene Mapping: Continuation of approved work for FY 2002 to document Holocene deposits within the Canyon. Project purpose is to define the area potentially affected by dam operations relative to sediment deposits, cultural and recreational resources. Implements a cultural PEP recommendation. Scale of project defined by existing information and feasibility based on scoping meeting held early in FY 2002.
- A-5. Cultural Data Base Plan. Development of cultural resource data base plan as stipulated in the PEP recommendation and a component of the Historic Preservation Plan stipulated in the PA agreement. Plan development was postponed due to development of other HPP components.
- A-6. Kanab Ambersnail Taxonomy: Second year of multi-year project to resolve taxonomic issues associated with *Oxyloma* complex. This project will use a combination of molecular genetics techniques and morphometric measurements to determine the most appropriate taxonomic classification of snails at Vasey's Paradise. This will be done in the context of resolving the taxonomy for this species that will include examining related snails outside the Colorado River ecosystem.
- B-1. Aquatic Foodbase Monitoring - External: Data collection and analysis of algae and benthos to measure response to operations. This will be the second year of a three year contract to improve the statistical rigor of prior foodbase monitoring and done in a repeatable way to allow for determination of status and trends. Increased emphasis in Glen Canyon and in association with gauging stations in Grand Canyon. The project is integrated with downstream water quality, in house foodbase work, and measurements taken by the physical resources program. Project is responsive to aquatic PEP report.
- B-2. Aquatic Foodbase Monitoring – In House: This project was new in FY02 and represents an effort to better understand and establish trends in the dynamics and availability of aquatic food resources for higher organisms. The project will monitor and establish trends for the flux of organic carbon in the riverine portion of the CRE by measuring different size fractions of carbon from dissolved to particulate (including invertebrate drift) at fixed stations. The monitoring is closely coupled with downstream water quality work and measurements taken in the physical resources program.
- B-3. Monitoring Downstream Fish: New RFP to be issued for FY04 work. Data collection and analysis of fish populations in the mainstem and Little Colorado River likely involving 4 LCR trips and 6 mainstem trips that include 2 trips for estimates of trout (rainbow, brown) and 3 trips to develop native fish abundance estimates and for synoptic surveys to detect distribution changes. This project is intended to provide statistically reliable status and trend information for key native and non-native fish in the CRE. Initial efforts will be included to expand the sampling effort in the lower Grand Canyon, below Diamond Creek.

- B-4. Monitoring Lees Ferry Trout: New RFP for work in FY04 involving population estimates for Lees Ferry trout fishery including proportional stock density and condition factor of fish. Establishes status and trend information for the Lees Ferry trout fishery.
- B-5. IWQP Downstream Activities: Water quality monitoring in the CRE downstream of Glen Canyon dam. Monitoring provides status and trend information with respect to temperature and nutrient dynamics and is designed to integrate with foodbase monitoring efforts to improve understanding of the relationships between water quality and biological resources. Includes development of downstream water quality model to interface with Lake Powell model.
- B-6. IWQP Lake Powell: Water quality monitoring of reservoir, includes monthly and quarterly sampling and incorporation of modeling effort into monitoring program. Monitoring plan will be undergoing revision based upon knowledge gained from the simulation modeling effort and ability to predict reservoir dynamics and quality of downstream water releases based on reservoir stage, inflows, discharge, and seasonal dynamics.
- B-7. Native and Non-native Fish Interactions Research: Projects will include predator - prey interactions, competition, and bioenergetics model development. This research is intended to provide improved mechanistic understanding of the role of non-native fishes in the population dynamics of native species. Also includes design and technical assistance for non-native fish control efforts.
- B-8. Captive Breeding Program Feasibility: This new project is intended to examine the feasibility of establishing a hatchery-based captive-breeding program for native fishes in the CRE, particularly Humpback Chub. Establishment and maintenance of captive breeding programs is a potentially viable means of species preservation when wild populations are in very low abundance. Conservation of genetic integrity for a species as well as maintenance and production of fish for supplemental stocking or reintroduction to the wild would be among the goals of such a program if established.
- C-1. Monitoring of Fine-Grained Sediment Storage: This project is designed to annually assess the spatial distribution of sand- and finer-sized material stored within the main channel of the Colorado River ecosystem; specifically related to storage in eddy complexes and main-channel pools. Monitoring data shall reflect the relative changes in total volume of sediment and grain-size distribution within a subset of representative reaches throughout the ecosystem, with emphasis on the first 100 miles below the dam. These data support information needs on the state of the available fine-sediment supply in the system subject to influence of dam operations. Related elements of this project include documenting changes in high-elevation sand storage (above 25,000 cfs) related to available campable areas, evolution of sand bar grain-size distribution, changes in the spatial distribution of channel-bed substrates, changes in the number and size of return-current channels within eddy complexes (backwater habitats) and changes in the size of pre-dam river terraces.

- C-2. **Monitoring Streamflow and Fine-Sediment:** This project provides data on streamflow and suspended-sediment transport on the gaged tributaries that provide fine-sediment to ecosystem (influx), and on suspended-sediment transport through critical reaches of the main channel of the Colorado River ecosystem (efflux). It has one research component related to advancing development of a protocol for tracking the fine-sediment budget in real time through a variety of integrated and remotely sensed input data.
- 2 (a) **Formal Evaluation of Technologies for Continuous, In-Situ Suspended-Sediment Transport Monitoring:** One-year evaluation of in-situ instrumentation aimed at tracking continuous suspended-sediment transport (reach-scale export) between Glen Canyon Dam and Diamond Creek using laser-diffraction technologies (LISST). Initial evaluation will be conducted using installation of LISST-25 instrument at the Grand Canyon stream gage. Grain-size and concentration data for suspended sediment conditions derived from LISST will be verified using the daily-to-weekly samples collected as part of long-term monitoring. This evaluation will be conducted in collaboration between the GCMRC and the WRD of USGS.
- 2 (b) **Advance Warning for Anticipating Paria River Sediment Inputs:** This consists mostly of hardware required for instrumentation of the Upper Paria River watershed so that sediment inputs to the main channel of the Colorado River can be better anticipated. The need for this system relates to a desire by managers to have sufficient lead time to allow high flows from Glen Canyon Dam to be released during or immediately following large sand inputs. This network would likely provide from 12-18 hours of advance notice before large Paria River floods reach the main channel.
- C-3. **Monitoring Coarse-Grained Sediment:** This project provides data on tributary inputs of coarse sediment introduced by debris flows annually, and information about how these inputs change the geomorphology of the main channel settings where sand storage, recreational, food base and fisheries resources exist.
- C-4. **One-dimensional Fine Sediment Routing and Sand-Bar Evolution Models:** This project results in a numerical simulation for routing sand inputs from the Paria and Little Colorado Rivers, downstream through main channel storage settings below Glen Canyon Dam, including eddy complexes and main channel pools. The simulation uses modeled information on sand inputs, in combination with predictions of travel time and historical and model-derived local conditions of sand bar deposition and erosion.
- C-5. **Control Network.** The objective of this project is to develop a high precision survey control network throughout the CRE that can be used to georeference and geographically integrate field and remotely sensed monitoring and research data. The project will provide a suitable rim control network and line-of-site floor control network throughout the CRE with accuracies suitable for existing and projected GCMRC natural and cultural resource projects.

- C-6. Channel Mapping. The objective of this project is to develop a sub-aqueous topographic basemap of the Colorado River channel throughout the CRE at a resolution suitable for habitat mapping and monitoring of sediment load transported on the channel bottom.
- C-7. LCR Integrated Studies: Proposed as a new synthesis project of integrated research on the historical variability and change that has occurred with respect to physical, biological and cultural resources within the Little Colorado River drainage basin. The main objective of this research is to study relationships between changes in the physical processes and resources of the Little Colorado River drainage basin and associated biological and cultural resources. Topics of research concern include: issues related to introduction of non-native species and interactions with non-native fishes (primarily, humpback chub), trends in land use, depletions affecting hydrology of base flow (spring effluent), regulation impacts within the basin and any related affects on runoff “events,” changes in basin hydrology and relations to climatic variability, and historical changes in sediment supply and sediment transport.
- C-8. Adopt-a-beach. Collection of repeat photographic data by volunteer boatmen at selected beaches throughout the Colorado River ecosystem. Increased emphasis on integration of project data to supplement quantitative data collected under other protocols. A project review is scheduled at the end of FY 2004 to evaluate the continued utility of this project in combination with other gcmrc related activities.
- D-1. Unsolicited Proposals: The GCMRC proposes to retain funds in support of unsolicited proposals that will allow for flexibility in the program and help ensure that GCMRC can address critical issues in a timely fashion. It will also provide GCMRC the ability to fund truly outstanding proposals that addresses a key concern that may be overlooked in the research planning process. All unsolicited proposals will be discussed with the TWG and will undergo independent, external peer review prior to funding.
- D-2. AMWG/TWG Requests: GCMRC budgets funding that can be used in support of requests that arise from the AMWG and TWG during the course of the year.
- D-3. In-house Research: The GCMRC supports in-house research by GCMRC Program Managers and scientific staff. In-house research is supported as a means of ensuring that GCMRC program managers and scientific staff remain subject area experts in their respective fields through the conduct of their own research on the Colorado River ecosystem. This also ensures that they are able to provide the highest quality of technical assistance in the form of expert analysis, opinion, and advice to the Chief, TWG and the AMWG as requested. In-house research may be in the form of original research or synthesis. In all cases, GCMRC in-house research proposals undergo the same independent external review as all GCMRC proposals.
- D-4. Tribal Training, Science/Tribal Perspectives Integration/Tribal Interns: Follow-on workshops for tribal training, science/tribal perspective integration workshop implementation, and use of tribal student interns. Purpose of work is to increase tribal participation within AMP for project development and implementation.

- D-5. Public Outreach Involvement Plan Implementation. Implementation of public outreach/involvement plan developed during FY 03 as stipulated in the PA agreement and recommended by the cultural PEP. Originally recommended as cultural plan, but as recommended by several stakeholders expanded to include all AMP resources.
- D-6. Cultural Resources Synthesis and Status Report: Incorporates data and reports developed by AMP cultural representatives to provide a general synthetic knowledge gained from projects and integrated across resource areas. Developed in-house by GCMRC with collaboration with AMP cultural representatives. Project provides current information within SCORE report.
- D-7. Cultural Affiliation Plan. An ethnographic project that is a companion plan to the Research Design Plan contracted in FY-01. This project forms a component of the Historic Preservation Plan and provides information on tribal histories and affiliation to the project area.

VI. GCMRC ADMINISTRATIVE & TECHNICAL SUPPORT

- A-1. Administrative Operations: These costs are for salary and other operating expenses in support of administrative operations and management of GCMRC. Included is salary of the Chief and administrative staff, space and facilities, travel, training, vehicles, office supplies and equipment and maintenance. Also included are costs for USGS local network and Flagstaff Science Center support, and USGS regional services including contracting and personnel. Includes salaries for GCMRC staff not otherwise assigned to project costs.
- A-2. Program Planning and Management: These costs are for salary and travel in support of program planning and management in the areas of Biological, Physical, and Cultural Resources, and Information Technologies.
- A-3. AMWG/TWG Participation: These costs are to cover salary and travel to attend and prepare for AMWG and TWG meetings.
- A-4. Independent Review Panels: Independent external review is at the heart of GCMRC's approach to program management and implementation. Independent external peer-review ensures the quality and objectivity of GCMRC's programs. All proposals, reports, programs, etc., are subject to independent peer review according to GCMRC's peer-review protocols. These costs cover all of the expenses related to the peer-review process, the Science Advisors, Protocol Evaluation Panels and the salary of the Review Coordinator. The Review Coordinator reports directly to the Chief.
- B-1. Geographic Information Systems: The GIS is a core information technology used by the GCMRC. Its purpose is to provide spatial analysis capabilities to GCMRC staff and stakeholders and maintain a library of GIS thematic coverages of the study area. The GIS is an important analytical tool for change detection of biological, cultural, and physical data relating to the operations of Glen Canyon Dam.

- B-2. **Data Base Management:** The purpose of the DBMS is to store and deliver tabular and other electronic data pertaining to the CRE. The need for a comprehensive database for maintaining this information was recognized by the National Academy of Sciences in their initial review of the GCES Program in 1987, and reinforced during a second review in 1990. Extensive data and information currently exists in the GCMRC collections relating to resource conditions, quality, and relationships to other resources. Potentially equal amounts of data and information exist within museums, universities, agencies, etc. However, much of this information has not been organized, managed or integrated into an analysis of the interrelationship among various resources and dam operations. The GCMRC data base management systems will, to the extent possible, integrate these vast and disparate data sets into a single ecologically integrated database that can be accessed by stakeholders, scientists, and the public interested in analyzing data pertaining to the Colorado River Ecosystem.
- B-3. **Library Operations:** Library operations are a core information technology used by the GCMRC ITP. Its purpose is to facilitate research by providing a centralized repository for hard copy information such as books, reports, maps, photography, and videos. The scope and purpose of the library is to collect, archive and deliver those materials that assist the center in its efforts to administer long-term monitoring and research.
- B-4. **Survey Operations:** The Survey department's mission is to provide survey support for spatial measurement and referencing of scientific data collected in the Colorado River ecosystem by GCMRC programs. This support may be in the form of precise measurement of geographic coordinates of a sample collected in the Canyon or in the generation of topographic maps used for erosion monitoring of terraces adjacent to the Colorado River. The Survey department is also responsible for establishing and maintaining accurate geographic control in the Canyon that is essential for accurate geo-referencing of remotely sensed data and change detection of resource data using modern image processing and GIS technologies. These technologies are critical to the integration and analysis of the diverse scientific data that have been collected in the Canyon over the past 15 years.
- B-5. **Decision Support System Development:** GCMRC provides objective, scientific information to the AMWG for use in making recommendations to the Secretary of the Interior regarding the effects of dam operations on the Colorado River ecosystem (CRE). In support of this effort, GCMRC is developing: (1) a conceptual (i.e., computer) model of the CRE, (2) a detailed map of the CRE, (3) GIS overlays for the CRE, and (3) an integrated Oracle database of research on the CRE. Missing from this equation is the decision-support system (DSS) overlay that can act to integrate these various efforts and support the AMWG in examining various management actions/policy changes that they may wish to recommend to the Secretary.
- B-6: **Systems Administration:** The GCMRC computing environment is a complex system of servers, workstations, laptops, printers, plotters, modems, routers, hubs, switches, copy machines, FAX's, and telecommunications equipment networked together using 100baseT networking media. Most of the computers are of the PC type running the Windows NT/2000 operating system. In addition, over 50 applications are utilized by GCMRC

scientists and support personnel in carrying out the collective mission of the GCMRC. Applications are primarily off-the-shelf products but in many cases are highly specialized. The system administrator develops, implements, and troubleshoots the infrastructure necessary to support the complex computer environment at GCMRC.

B-7: Aerial Photography:

(a) The GCMRC has been collecting annual aerial photography of the CRE for over ten years in support of biological, cultural, and physical research and monitoring activities related to the operations of the Glen Canyon dam. Until recently, the photography product delivered has been a nine by nine inch contact prints of black and white or color infrared film at an approximate scale of 1/4800. Photographs have been delivered without any rectification or geopositioning information. While useful for many past monitoring and research activities in the CRE, these products are largely being supplanted by high resolution multispectral digital products that include pointing and positioning parameters that allow convenient rectification and geopositioning. These products have much more utility and allow improved image analysis using automated computerized techniques. In addition, with the addition of LIDAR equipment, high accuracy topographic information can be acquired simultaneously in areas where volume information is desired.

(b) The Grand Canyon Monitoring and Research Center's library collection includes almost 32,000 aerial photographs of the Colorado River spanning a period of 65 years. Presently, the photo collection is at risk because it is not stored under fireproof and waterproof conditions. Transferring these images into a digital format will provide greater accessibility to researchers and better preservation of the original media. Photographs, including both black and white and color infrared images would be selected, scanned, compressed, and archived onto GCMRC electronic data systems and DVD.

B-8. Logistics: GCMRC provides all logistical support for monitoring and research projects conducted by contracted Principal Investigators whose work is administered by GCMRC Program Managers in physical, biological and social-cultural resource programs. GCMRC staff initiate some of their own in-house scientific activities, which require logistical support, including; the Integrated Water Quality Program, administrative trips for groups such as the TWG, AMWG, Science Advisors and program PEP panels. The GCMRC also supports logistical needs for the Bureau of Reclamation's activities conducted by Native American groups under the Programmatic Agreement program and activities conducted to meet Reclamation's needs concerning endangered species. In addition, GCMRC provides logistics support for any contingency plans or experimental floods. GCMRC logistics costs are accounted for under the specific projects, which they support.